国家对外汉语教学领导小组办公室规划教材项目
北大版新一代对外汉语教材·实用汉语系列

易捷汉语
实用会话

EASY CHINESE
SPEAK OUT

主编:刘 彤 邵力敏
编者:梁德惠 杨 茵 鞠海钰

北 京 大 学 出 版 社
中央广播电视大学音像出版社
·北 京·

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

易捷汉语：实用会话/刘彤等主编．—北京：北京大学出版社，2004.2

（北大版新一代对外汉语教材．实用汉语系列）

ISBN 7-301-06636-8

Ⅰ．易…　Ⅱ．刘…　Ⅲ．汉语－口语－对外汉语教学－教材　Ⅳ．H195.4

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2003）第 098001 号

书　　　名：易捷汉语 实用会话
著作责任者：刘彤 等主编
责 任 编 辑：沈浦娜
标 准 书 号：ISBN 7-301-06636-8/H·0915
出 版 发 行：北京大学出版社　中央广播电视大学音像出版社
地　　　址：北京市海淀区中关村北京大学校内　100871
网　　　址：http://cbs.pku.edu.cn
电　　　话：邮购部　62752015　发行部 62750672　编辑部 62752028
电 子 信 箱：spn@pup.pku.edu.cn
排　版　者：北京国民灰色系统科学研究院计算机室
印　刷　者：北京中科印刷有限公司
经　销　者：新华书店
850 毫米×1168 毫米　32 开本　11.625 印张　300 千字
2004 年 2 月第 1 版　2004 年 2 月第 1 次印刷
定　　　价：28.00 元

未经许可，不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有，翻版必究

目　　录

前言 ······ 1

Preface ······ 3

编写说明 ······ 5

For the readers ······ 7

第一课　入关检查 ······ 1

Dì-yī Kè　Rùguān Jiǎnchá

Lesson 1　Go through the Customs

第二课　取行李 ······ 7

Dì-èr Kè　Qǔ Xíngli

Lesson 2　Claim Luggage

第三课　找厕所 ······ 13

Dì-sān Kè　Zhǎo Cèsuǒ

Lesson 3　Find a Restroom

第四课　坐出租车 ······ 19

Dì-sì Kè　Zuò Chūzūchē

Lesson 4　Take a Taxi

第五课　换钱 ······ 25

Dì-wǔ Kè　Huàn Qián

Lesson 5　Money Exchange

第六课　天气 ······ 32

Dì-liù Kè　Tiānqì

Lesson 6　Weather

第七课 预订房间 …… 39
Dì-qī Kè Yùdìng Fángjiān
Lesson 7 Room Reservation
第八课 订房有误 …… 46
Dì-bā Kè Dìng Fáng Yǒu Wù
Lesson 8 Room Reservation Errors
第九课 客房登记 …… 52
Dì-jiǔ Kè Kèfáng Dēngjì
Lesson 9 Check in
第十课 换房与报修 …… 59
Dì-shí Kè Huàn Fáng yǔ Bào Xiū
Lesson 10 Room Change and Request a Repair
第十一课 运动 …… 65
Dì-shíyī Kè Yùndòng
Lesson 11 Sports
第十二课 在前台留口信 …… 72
Dì-shíèr Kè Zài Qiántái Liú Kǒuxìn
Lesson 12 Leave a Message at the Front Desk
第十三课 找人 …… 79
Dì-shísān Kè Zhǎo Rén
Lesson 13 Look for Someone
第十四课 打长途电话 …… 86
Dì-shísì Kè Dǎ Chángtú Diànhuà
Lesson 14 Make a Long-distance Call
第十五课 洗衣 …… 93
Dì-shíwǔ Kè Xǐ Yī
Lesson 15 Do Laundry

第十六课　钱算错了 ······ 100
Dì-shíliù Kè　Qián Suàn Cuò Le
Lesson 16　The Bill is Wrongly Calculated
第十七课　投诉 ······ 107
Dì-shíqī Kè　Tóusù
Lesson 17　Make a Complaint
第十八课　问路 ······ 114
Dì-shíbā Kè　Wèn Lù
Lesson 18　Ask for Direction
第十九课　乘车 ······ 121
Dì-shíjiǔ Kè　Chèng Chē
Lesson 19　Take a Bus
第二十课　寄特快专递和发传真 ······ 128
Dì-èrshí Kè　Jì Tèkuài Zhuāndì hé Fā Chuánzhēn
Lesson 20　Express Delivery and Faxing
第二十一课　寄信和寄包裹 ······ 135
Dì-èrshíyī Kè　Jì Xìn hé Jì Bāoguǒ
Lesson 21　Mail a Letter and Send a Parcel
第二十二课　点菜 ······ 142
Dì-èrshíèr Kè　Diǎn Cài
Lesson 22　Order Dishes
第二十三课　几个要求 ······ 149
Dì-èrshísān Kè　Jǐ Gè Yāoqiú
Lesson 23　Several Special Requirements for the Dishes
第二十四课　买东西 ······ 156
Dì-èrshísì Kè　Mǎi Dōngxi
Lesson 24　Shopping

第二十五课 讨价还价 …… 164
Dì-èrshíwǔ Kè Tǎo Jià Huán Jià
Lesson 25 Bargaining
第二十六课 打折 …… 171
Dì-èrshíliù Kè Dǎ Zhé
Lesson 26 Discount
第二十七课 买菜 …… 177
Dì-èrshíqī Kè Mǎi Cài
Lesson 27 Buy Vegetables
第二十八课 退货 …… 185
Dì-èrshíbā Kè Tuì Huò
Lesson 28 Return Merchandise
第二十九课 买票 …… 191
Dì-èrshíjiǔ Kè Mǎi Piào
Lesson 29 Buy Tickets
第三十课 改变预订 …… 199
Dì-sānshí Kè Gǎibiàn Yùdìng
Lesson 30 Change Reservations
第三十一课 理发 …… 207
Dì-sānshíyī Kè Lǐ Fà
Lesson 31 Have a Haircut
第三十二课 看望病人 …… 214
Dì-sānshíèr Kè Kànwàng Bìngrén
Lesson 32 Visit a Patient
第三十三课 看病(一) …… 221
Dì-sānshísān Kè Kàn Bìng (yī)
Lesson 33 See a Doctor (I)

第三十四课　看病(二) ………………………… 230
Dì-sānshísì Kè　Kàn Bìng (èr)
Lesson 34　See a Doctor (Ⅱ)
第三十五课　取药 ………………………… 237
Dì-sānshíwǔ Kè　Qǔ Yào
Lesson 35　Get the Medicine
第三十六课　国内旅游 ………………………… 242
Dì-sānshíliù Kè　Guónèi Lǚyóu
Lesson 36　Domestic Travel
第三十七课　去唱卡拉 OK ………………………… 252
Dì-sānshíqī Kè　Qù Chàng Kǎlā OK
Lesson 37　Go to Karaoke
第三十八课　上网 ………………………… 259
Dì-sānshíbā Kè　Shàng Wǎng
Lesson 38　Get on the Internet
第三十九课　去酒吧 ………………………… 264
Dì-sānshíjiǔ Kè　Qù Jiǔbā
Lesson 39　Go to a Bar
第四十课　问电话号码和寻呼号 ………………………… 273
Dì-sìshí Kè　Wèn Diànhuà Hàomǎ hé Xúnhūhào
Lesson 40　Ask Telephone Number and Page Number
第四十一课　打电话 ………………………… 281
Dì-sìshíyī Kè　Dǎ Diànhuà
Lesson 41　Make a Call
第四十二课　交朋友 ………………………… 289
Dì-sìshíèr Kè　Jiāo Péngyou
Lesson 42　Make Friends

第四十三课 参加聚会 ………………………………………… 297
Dì-sìshísān Kè Cānjiā Jùhuì
Lesson 43 Take Part in a Party
第四十四课 请假 ………………………………………… 305
Dì-sìshísì Kè Qǐng Jià
Lesson 44 Ask for Leave
第四十五课 请客 ………………………………………… 311
Dì-sìshíwǔ Kè Qǐng Kè
Lesson 45 Being the Host
第四十六课 过节 ………………………………………… 319
Dì-sìshíliù Kè Guò Jié
Lesson 46 Celebrate a Festival
第四十七课 广播找人 ………………………………………… 326
Dì-sìshíqī Kè Guǎngbō Zhǎo Rén
Lesson 47 Look for Someone Using PA System
第四十八课 给别人带话 ………………………………………… 333
Dì-sìshíbā Kè Gěi Biéren Dài Huà
Lesson 48 Take a Message for Somebody
第四十九课 逛古董市场 ………………………………………… 340
Dì-sìshíjiǔ Kè Guàng Gǔdǒng Shìchǎng
Lesson 49 Shop at an Antique Market
第五十课 参加交易会 ………………………………………… 347
Dì-wǔshí Kè Cānjiā Jiāoyìhuì
Lesson 50 Take Part in a Trade Fair

前　言

易捷汉语教材系列是专门为非在校学习汉语的人士编写的。名为“易捷”，标示着这套教材的特点：实用易学、快捷速成。它的目的是让更多的人都有机会接触汉语，可以不去学校、可以没有老师、可以不用整块的时间，可以不管令人头痛的语法规则和笔画复杂的汉字，在短时间里会说一些汉语，认识一些有用的汉字，并且可以用学到的东西跟中国朋友交流或者应付一点实际问题。

易捷汉语教材系列面对的是那些对汉语和中国文化感兴趣，想了解中国文化并想学一点基本交际汉语的外国朋友（《轻松入门》）；易捷汉语教材系列面对的是那些没有很多时间学习，但在工作或生活中又很需要用一些基本的汉语来应付工作或生活的外国朋友（《实用会话》）；易捷汉语教材系列面对的是那些孩子要学习汉语，而家长也希望和孩子们一起学习的家庭（《欢乐时光》）；易捷汉语教材系列面对的是那些在中国生活或工作，需要认识中国的店铺招牌、指示标牌、各种标识的外国朋友（《识汉字认招牌》）。

易捷汉语教材系列不仅可以作学习汉语的教材，还可以用作在中国生活、学习、工作、旅行的应急汉语指南。

易捷汉语教材系列有书、录音带、录像带、CD、VCD、CD-Rom、MP3 等多种媒体互相配套，还可以通过电视网络和互联网传播。它是一个多种媒体、立体化的对外汉语教材系列，它为学习者提供了多种媒体和多种学习方式的选择。

易捷汉语教材系列包括：

《轻松入门》

《实用会话》

《识汉字认招牌》

《欢乐时光（儿童篇）》

《欢乐时光（父母篇）》



Preface

"Easy Chinese Series" was specifically created for students not studying in school, and the title, "Easy", says it all: an easy and practical study course, and swift results. It is made in order to bring even more people into contact with Chinese, and to give them an opportunity to speak Chinese, write characters, and learn to deal with Chinese people without the hassle of classrooms, teachers, grueling schedules, or the nitpickiness of grammatical rules and writing lessons.

"Easy Chinese Series" is made for non-Chinese interested in Chinese and Chinese culture, or hoping to have some practical interactions with Chinese people ("*Understanding Chinese*"). It is also made for students with little time, but who must use basic Chinese in their daily work or living environments ("*Speak out*"). "Easy Chinese Series" is also made for the parents of children studying Chinese, who want to learn along with them ("*Time to Talk Chinese*"). Lastly, "Easy Chinese Series" is made for foreigners living or working in China, who want to be able to read shop signs, street signs, and other written Chinese ("*Sights and Signs*").

"Easy Chinese Series" can be utilized not only as study material, but also as emergency reference while traveling, living, studying or working in China.

"Easy Chinese Series" is a multimedia set including a book, audio tapes, video cassettes, CD, VCD, CD Rom and MP3. It can also be used via television networks or the Internet. It offers students a multi-

media, multi-faceted option for studying Chinese.

"Easy Chinese Series" includes:

Understanding Chinese

Speak out

Sights and Signs

Time to Talk Chinese for Children

Time to Talk Chinese for Parents



编写说明

《易捷汉语　实用会话》是易捷汉语教材系列中的一部，和这个系列中的其他教材一样，《实用会话》也不单纯只有一本书，它是有着纸质（书）和录音（录音带、CD)、录像（VCD、录像带)、CD、MP3 等多种媒体形式互相配套的立体化的汉语教材。本书目前已有 4 盘 VCD、4 盘 CD。

《易捷汉语　实用会话》是为学过 3～6 个月汉语、有语音基础、掌握了一定量生词的汉语学习者而编写制作的。它突出实用性，旨在使学习者熟悉中国的实际生活环境，帮助学习者提高实际生活中的汉语会话能力，更快地适应汉语地区的生活和工作。

《易捷汉语　实用会话》一共有 50 课，会话的场景涵盖了外国人在中国可能遇到的各种情形，如：旅游购物、探亲访友、洗衣吃饭等等，同时还引进了许多当代社会生活内容：寄 EMS（特快专递)、上网、唱卡拉 OK 等，这在正规的学校学习中是难得学到的内容。

本书由几个部分组成：

(1) 句型（Sentence Pattern）列出来的是每课主要用到的句型，可以给你的学习起个提示作用。

(2) 你知道吗？（Do you know?）介绍的是每课涉及场景的相关背景知识，了解这些，有助于你遇到类似场合的时候知道自己该怎么做。

(3) 生词（Vocabulary）这里给出的是每课的关键词语，弄懂了这些词语，进入后面的学习时，你就不会感到困难了。

(4) 常用表达法（Useful Phrases and Expressions）对每

课出现的常用表达句型给以讲解，并不是复杂的语法讲解，主要是告诉你这个表达可以怎么用，用在什么地方。

(5) 情景会话（Situational Conversation） 通过这里的会话，你可以看到在哪些场合下，实际生活中人们是怎么用汉语来表达的。

(6) 练习（Exercises） 练习的方式主要有三种。

i. “读一读”的词语你可以记住，并且可以用到你已经学会的句型中进行替换；

ii. “试一试”是单纯的替换练习，你可以模仿着做，然后还可以从“读一读”中找到合适的词语进行扩充的替换练习；

iii. “能力训练”会给你几个情景，你可以试试把这课学过的所有词语和句型都用上，用汉语去应付这些场合，如果你能流利自如，那说明这课你已经都掌握了。

使用这部教材，你不必担心认汉字困难的问题，无论在书里还是在录像里，学习的内容：生词、会话和练习里的句子全都配有汉语拼音，借助拼音，你同样可以学习并掌握口语。

实际上，你不仅可以把《易捷汉语 实用会话》当作汉语教材来学习，还可以把它当成在中国生活、学习、工作、旅行时的应急汉语指南。把书带在身上，遇到需要的场合，即使一时说不出来，也可以把书上相应的内容指给别人看，从而达到你的目的。

我们希望，将要来中国或已经来到中国的你，无论你是来工作还是来学习或是来旅游，《易捷汉语 实用会话》都能对你有帮助，使你在中国的一切顺利。

编写者

For the readers

"Easy Chinese Speak out" is the part of the "Easy Chinese Series". Much like the other parts of the series. "Speak out" is not just a book, it is a multimedia teaching aid set incorporating paper, audio and visual aspects. For the moment, 4 VCD and 4 CD available.

"Easy Chinese Speak out" is for students with 3-6 months of Chinese experience; who have a basic understanding of Chinese and have already grasped a certain level of vocabulary, grammar and characters. It is surpassingly practical, acquainting students with the Chinese cultural environment, helping them improve their ability to conduct actual dialogues, and allowing them to quickly adjust to life and work in various parts of China.

"Easy Chinese Speak out" consists of 50 lessons, covering a number of situations that foreigners may encounter while in China, for example: tourist shopping, visiting friends, washing clothes, eating, etc. At the same time it touches on many facets of modern life in China, such as using the Internet, mailing express packages, singing Karaoke, and other topics rarely covered in traditional school settings.

"Speak out" is divided into several sections.

1. Sentence Pattern. Gives exampmes of the important sentence structures introduced in each section.

2. Do you know? Introduces the background information necessary to understand each lesson' s information, and to help you understand what to do in similar situations you may meet yourself.

3. Vocabulary. Each lesson' s key words: learning these words thoroughly will allow you to progress easily through the remaining lessons.

4. Useful Phrases and Expressions. Provides a basic explanation of the useful phrases and expressions used in each lesson. Explains how to

use the phrase without getting into lengthy or complicated discussions of grammar.

5. Situational Conversation. Learn how phrases and expressions are used in real life by studying these example dialogues.

6. Exercises. Exercises are arranged into three main types.

i. "Learning word groups by heart" helps students remember words, and by switching vocabulary in and out of the sentences students can expand their abilities.

ii. "Substitution Drills" are purely to help students familiarize themselves with vocabulary, and to understand the broader uses of the words from the "learning word groups by heart" section.

iii. "Making sentences in the given situations and using the grammar presented in the lesson" gives a few example situations, and allows students to practice the vocabulary and grammar learned in that lesson. If students can fluently use Chinese to cope with these situations, they will have mastered that lesson.

While using these materials, you don't need to worry about the difficulty of Chinese characters: whether in the book or the video tape, all vocabulary, exercises and dialogues are written in both characters and pinyin, allowing students to both study characters and practice their speaking ability.

Actually, you needn't only use "Easy Chinese Speak out" as a study aid, it can also be used while living, studying, working and traveling in China, as an emergency reference. Keep the book with you, and when you find yourself unable to speak the words you need, simply point to the appropriate part of the book to reach your goals.

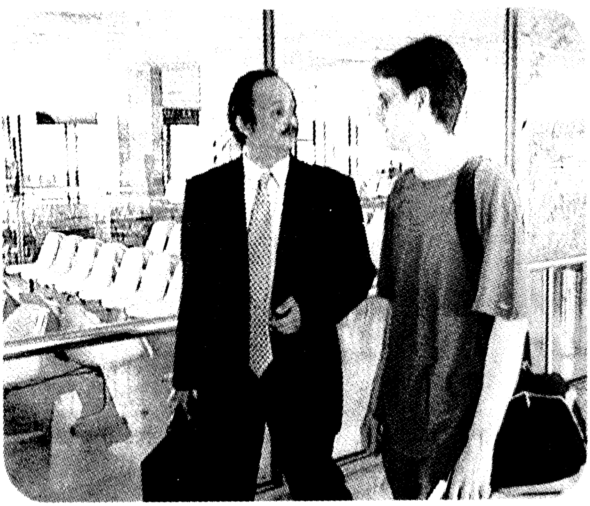
We hope that during your time in China, regardless of whether you have come to work or study or travel, "Easy Chinese Speak out" will be of use to you, and always smooth your way.

Compiler

第一课　入关检查

Dì-yī Kè　Rùguān Jiǎnchá

Lesson 1　Go through the Customs



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我来中国……。

   Wǒ lái Zhōngguó…….

2. 这是……。

   Zhè shì…….

你知道吗? Do you know?

海关要对进出境的旅客查验护照和签证,旅客必须持有效签证入境。一般在飞机上旅客就要填写入境单,填姓名、入境日期、入境事由等,表格兼有中、英文两种文字,不必担心因为不认识汉字造成麻烦。

When the travelers enter and exit a country, their passports and visas are checked by customs officials. One must hold a valid visa in order to enter a country. Travelers are supposed to fill out entry forms on the plane, which include their name, the date and their reason for entry. They are usually in both Chinese and English, so you do not need to worry about troubles with language.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 护照	hùzhào	passport
2. (做)生意	(zuò)shēngyi	(to do) business
3. 海关	hǎiguān	customs
4. 入境	rù jìng	to enter the customs
5. 手续	shǒuxù	procedures; formalities

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我来中国学汉语。

   Wǒ lái Zhōngguó xué Hànyǔ.

   I have come to China to learn Chinese.

● If you are asked by someone why you have come to China, you can say "Wǒ lái Zhōngguó……." Now the following are more examples:

(1)我来中国做生意。

Wǒ lái Zhōngguó zuò shēngyi.

I have come to China to do business.

(2)我来中国看朋友。

Wǒ lái Zhōngguó kàn péngyou.

I have come to China to visit a friend.

2. 这是我的机票和护照。

Zhè shì wǒ de jīpiào hé hùzhào.

These are my airline ticket and passport.

● When the customs officials are checking your papers and personal belongings, you can say "Zhè shì……." Here are more examples:

(1) 这是我的照相机。

Zhè shì wǒ de zhàoxiàngjī.

This is my camera.

(2) 这是我给朋友的礼物。

Zhè shì wǒ gěi péngyou de lǐwù.

This/These is/are gift(s) for my friend.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Two passengers are just getting off the plane, and they are talking.)

旅客甲：你来中国做什么？
Nǐ lái Zhōngguó zuò shénme?
Why have you come to China?

旅客乙：我来中国学汉语。你呢？
Wǒ lái Zhōngguó xué Hànyǔ. Nǐ ne?
I have come to China to learn Chinese. How about you?

旅客甲：我来中国做生意。
Wǒ lái Zhōngguó zuò shēngyi.
I have come to China to do business.

会话二

旅客甲：办海关入境手续的时候，他们要看你的机票和护照。
Bàn hǎiguān rù jìng shǒuxù de shíhou, tāmen yào kàn nǐ de jīpiào hé hùzhào.
When you enter the immigration and customs, they will ask to see your airline ticket and passport.

旅客乙：没问题。这是我的机票和护照。
Méi wèntí. Zhè shì wǒ de jīpiào hé hùzhào.
No problem. Here are my airline ticket and passport.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

上大学	shàng dàxué	to attend college
看朋友	kàn péngyou	to visit a friend(s)
看亲戚	kàn qīnqi	to visit a relative(s)

工作	gōngzuò	to work
做生意	zuò shēngyi	to do business
买东西	mǎi dōngxi	to buy something
手机	shǒujī	mobile phone
电脑	diànnǎo	computer
照相机	zhàoxiàngjī	camera
海关申报单	hǎiguān shēnbào dān	customs declaration form

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. ——你来中国做什么?

Nǐ lái Zhōngguó zuò shénme?

——我来中国学汉语。

Wǒ lái Zhōngguó xué Hànyǔ.

工作
gōngzuò
买东西
mǎi dōngxi
上大学
shàng dàxué
看朋友
kàn péngyou

2. 这是我的机票和护照。

Zhè shì wǒ de jīpiào hé hùzhào.

电脑
diànnǎo
海关申报单
hǎiguān shēnbào dān

手机
shǒujī
东西
dōngxi

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你在商店看见朋友,常问他什么?

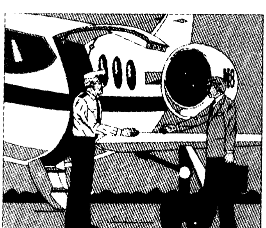
   Nǐ zài shāngdiàn kànjiàn péngyou, cháng wèn tā shénme?

   When you meet a friend of yours in a store, what do you usually say to him?

2. 给别人出示你的护照的时候,你说什么?

   Gěi biéren chūshì nǐ de hùzhào de shíhou, nǐ shuō shénme?

   What do you say when you present your passport?



第二课　取　行　李

Dì-èr Kè　　Qǔ Xíngli

Lesson 2　Claim Luggage



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……在哪儿取行李?

……zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

2. 这儿有……吗?

Zhèr yǒu ……ma?

你知道吗? Do you know?

取行李时可以使用机场免费的行李手推车,用完放在门口就行了,一般会有专门的人来收拾。万一行李丢了,航空公司只能按重量赔给客人,所以贵重物品绝对不要放在行李里。

Luggage carts are free for use when you claim your luggage. After using it you can leave it at the gate, and airport staff will collect it. If your luggage is lost by any chance, the airlines will make up the loss according to the weight of your luggage. Because of this you must not put anything of great value in your luggage.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 航班	hángbān	airline flight; scheduled flight
2. 行李	xíngli	luggage; baggage
3. 行李车	xíngli chē	luggage cart
4. 行李带	xíngli dài	luggage belt
5. 取	qǔ	to take; to get; to fetch

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. CA978 航班在哪儿取行李?

   CA jiǔ qī bā hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

   Where can I claim luggage from flight CA978? / Where is the luggage claim area for flight CA978?

- After getting off the plane or the train, you will certainly want to get your luggage. But where? You can ask a question like this:"……zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?" The following are more examples:

  (1) CZ167 航班在哪儿取行李?

  CZ yāo liù qī hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

  Where can I claim luggage from flight CZ167?

  (2) MF623 航班在哪儿取行李?

  MF liù èr sān hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

  Where can I claim luggage from flight MF623?

2. 这儿有行李车吗?

Zhèr yǒu xíngli chē ma?

Are there any luggage carts around here?

- When you need a luggage cart or any other thing, you can ask a question like: "Zhèr yǒu ……ma?" Here are more examples:

  (1)这儿有行李寄存处吗?

  Zhèr yǒu xíngli jìcún chù ma?

  Is there a left luggage office around here?

  (2)这儿有出租车吗?

  Zhèr yǒu chūzūchē ma?

  Can I get a taxi around here?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(A passenger in this example wants to know where he can claim his luggage.)

旅　　　客：请问，CA978 航班在哪儿取行李？

Qǐngwèn, CA jiǔ qī bā hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

Excuse me, where can I claim luggage from flight CA978?

工作人员甲：在第 11 号行李带。

Zài dì shí yī hào xíngli dài.

At luggage belt No. 11.

会话二

(In the following a passenger needs a luggage cart.)

旅　　　客：请问，这儿有行李车吗？

Qǐngwèn, zhèr yǒu xíngli chē ma?

Excuse me, are there any luggage cart around here?

工作人员乙：有，在那儿。

Yǒu, zài nàr.

Yes, they are over there.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

行李	xíngli	luggage
行李车	xíngli chē	luggage cart
行李带	xíngli dài	luggage belt
行李寄存处	xíngli jìcún chù	cost luggage office
出租车	chūzūchē	taxi
公共汽车	gōnggòng qìchē	bus

公用电话	gōngyòng diànhuà	public phone
轮船	lúnchuán	ship
交通图	jiāotōng tú	traffic map

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. ——CA978 航班在哪儿取行李?

   CA jiǔ qī bā hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli?

T13 次车
T shísān cì chē
CZ158 航班
CZ yāo wǔ bā hángbān
15 号汽车
shíwǔ hào qìchē
6 号轮船
liù hào lúnchuán

   ——在那儿。

   Zài nàr.

2. ——这儿有行李车吗?

   Zhèr yǒu xíngli chē ma ?

行李寄存处
xíngli jìcún chù
公共汽车
gōnggòng qìchē
出租车
chūzūchē
公用电话
gōngyòng diànhuà

——没有。

Méiyǒu.

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你想问你坐的CZ3151航班在哪儿取行李。

   Nǐ xiǎng wèn nǐ zuò de CZ sān yāo wǔ yāo hángbān zài nǎr qǔ xíngli.

   You would like to know where to claim your luggage from flight No.CZ3151.

2. 你找不到行李车,你怎么问飞机场的工作人员?

   Nǐ zhǎo bú dào xíngli chē, nǐ zěnme wèn fēijīchǎng de gōngzuò rényuán?

   You can't find a cart for your luggage. What do you say to the staff member at the airport to get one?

第三课　找　厕　所

Dì-sān Kè　Zhǎo Cèsuǒ

Lesson 3　Find a Restroom



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我要去一趟/下……。

   Wǒ yào qù yí tàng /xià…… .

2. 附近有……吗?

   Fùjìn yǒu ……ma?



你知道吗？Do you know?

汉语里“厕所”有很多种说法，如：“洗手间”、“卫生间”，台湾地区还说“化妆间”。“去厕所”还可以说“我去方便一下”，或者“我出去一下”。有些地方的公共厕所是收费的，5 毛钱一次。

There are many ways of saying “Toilet” in Chinese: Cèsuǒ (toilet), Xǐshǒujiān (hand washing room), Wèishēngjiān (hygiene room), or Huàzhuāngjiān (make-up room) in Taiwan. You could say “Qù cèsuǒ” (go to the toilet), or “Wǒ qù fāngbiàn yíxià” (I want to use the lavatory), or “Wǒ chūqu yíxià” (I want to go out for a while). In some places you will be charged 50 *fen* for using the toilet.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 厕所	cèsuǒ	toilet
2. 洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	toilet; restroom
3. 楼梯	lóutī	stairs; stairway
4. 麻烦	máfan	trouble; bother/to trouble; to bother
5. 附近	fùjìn	nearby

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我要去一趟洗手间。
   Wǒ yào qù yí tàng xǐshǒujiān.
   I need to go to the restroom for a moment.

- When you are with friends, and you want to go to the restroom or somewhere else, you can say: "Wǒ yào qù yí tàng xǐshǒujiān……." You can also say:"Wǒ yào qù yíxià……" "yíxià" means you won't take a long time. The following are more examples:

  (1)我要去一趟/一下休息室。

  Wǒ yào qù yí tàng/yíxià xiūxishì.

  I need to go to lounge (of a faculty) for a while.

  (2)我要去一趟/一下办公室。

  Wǒ yào qù yí tàng /yíxià bàngōngshì.

  I need to go to the office for a moment.

2. 附近有厕所吗?

Fùjìn yǒu cèsuǒ ma?

Is there a toilet nearby?

- There are different ways of saying "toilet" in Chinese. The ones in public places are called "cèsuǒ"; those in hotels, restaurants are called "xǐshǒujiān". When you are in a public place and need to go to a restroom or some specific places, you can ask "fùjìn yǒu ……ma?" Here are more examples:

  (1)附近有饭馆吗?

  Fùjìn yǒu fànguǎnr ma?

  Is there any restaurant nearby?

  (2)附近有电话吗?

  Fùjìn yǒu diànhuà ma?

  Is there any telephone booth nearby?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(In a restaurant, a man wants to go to the restroom.)

男士 A：对不起，我要去一趟洗手间。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ yào qù yí tàng xǐshǒujiān.

Excuse me, I need to go to the restroom.

(To the waitress)

男士 A：小姐，请问，洗手间在哪儿？

Xiǎojiě, qǐngwèn, xǐshǒujiān zài nǎr?

Excuse me please, where is the restroom?

服务员：洗手间在楼梯那边。

Xǐshǒujiān zài lóutī nèibian.

It's near the stairway.

男士 A：谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

会话二

(On the street)

男士 B：麻烦您，附近有厕所吗？

Máfan nín, fùjìn yǒu cèsuǒ ma?

Excuse me, is there any toilet nearby?

路 人：往前走。

Wǎng qián zǒu.

Go straight ahead.

男士 B：谢谢。
Xièxie.
Thank you.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

洗手间	xǐshǒujiān	toilet; washroom
办公室	bàngōngshì	office
休息室	xiūxishì	common room of a faculty; lounge
公司	gōngsī	company
餐厅	cāntīng	cafeteria
饭馆	fànguǎnr	restaurant
茶馆	cháguǎnr	teahouse
咖啡厅	kāfēitīng	coffee shop
酒吧	jiǔbā	bar

二、试一试（Substitution drills）

1. 我要去一下/趟<u>洗手间</u>。
   Wǒ yào qù yíxià /yí tàng <u>xǐshǒujiān</u>

休息室
xiūxishì
办公室
bàngōngshì
公司
gōngsī

朋友那儿
péngyou nàr

2. ——附近有饭馆吗?

Fùjìn yǒu fànguǎnr ma?

茶馆
cháguǎnr
酒吧
jiǔbā
咖啡厅
kāfēitīng
中国公司
Zhōngguó gōngsī

——有,在那儿。

Yǒu, zài nàr.

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 与朋友交谈的时候,你想去方便一下。你怎么说?

Yǔ péngyou jiāotán de shíhou, nǐ xiǎng qù fāngbiàn yíxià. Nǐ zěnme shuō?

What do you say when you want to go to the restroom during a conversation?

2. 在街上,你想找一个公共厕所。你怎么问?

Zài jiēshang, nǐ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè gōnggòng cèsuǒ. Nǐ zěnme wèn?

What do you say when you are looking for a public toilet on the street?

第四课　坐出租车

Dì-sì Kè　Zuò Chūzūchē

Lesson 4　Take a Taxi



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 去……多少钱?

   Qù ……duōshao qián?

2. 走……,到出口往……拐。

   Zǒu ……,dào chūkǒu wǎng ……guǎi.



你知道吗？Do you know?

中国的出租汽车比较便宜，是按公里计费的。每个城市规定的价格不一样，白天和晚上 10 点以后的价格也不一样，晚上要稍微贵一点。坐出租车一定记得要发票，万一把东西忘在车上，或者有别的意外情况，可以凭发票去投诉。

Taking a taxi in China is comparatively cheap. The fare is calculated according to the distance traveled, and different cities have different prices. The price after 10 p.m. is slightly more expensive than the day-time price. Do remember to ask for the receipt before you leave the taxi. You can use the receipt to contact the taxi company if you left anything behind in the car or if you have any complaints.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 表	biǎo	meter
2. 发票	fāpiào	bill; receipt
4. 高速公路	gāosù gōnglù	expressway
5. 出口	chūkǒu	exit
6. 拐	guǎi	to make a turn



常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 去机场多少钱？
   Qù jīchǎng duōshao qián?
   How much is the fare to the airport?

- You can use the structure "Qù……duōshǎo qián?" to ask how much you will have to pay to reach your destination. The following are more examples:

  (1) 去火车站多少钱?
  Qù huǒchēzhàn duōshao qián?
  How much is it to get to the railway station?

  (2) 去码头多少钱?
  Qù mǎtóu duōshao qián?
  How much is it to get to the port?

2. 走高速公路,到出口往右拐。
Zǒu gāosù gōnglù, dào chūkǒu wǎng yòu guǎi.
Take the expressway, and turn right at the exit.

- If you know how to get to your destination, you can give the driver directions using: "Zǒu……, dào …… wǎng…… guǎi." Here are more examples:

  (1)走高速公路，到出口往左拐。
  Zǒu gāosù gōnglù, dào chūkǒu wǎng zuǒ guǎi.
  Take the expressway, and turn left at the exit.

  (2)走花园路，到路口往右拐。
  Zǒu Huāyuán Lù, dào lùkǒu wǎng yòu guǎi.
  Take the Huayuan Road, and turn right at the intersection.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(A person wanting to take a taxi to the airport.)

乘客：师傅，去机场多少钱？

Shīfu，qù jīchǎng duōshao qián?

Sir, how much is it to get to the airport?

司机：打表 30 多块钱。

Dǎ biǎo sānshí duō kuài qián.

Using the meter, it is around 30 Yuan RMB.

乘客：下车给我发票。

Xià chē gěi wǒ fāpiào.

Please give me a receipt when I get off.

会话二

(In the cab)

乘客：师傅，去国际俱乐部。

Shīfu，qù Guójì Jùlèbù.

Sir, please take me to the International Club.

司机：怎么走？

Zěnme zǒu?

Which way do you want to go?

乘客：走高速公路，到出口往右拐。

Zǒu gāosù gōnglù，dào chūkǒu wǎng yòu guǎi.

Take the expressway, and turn right at the exit.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

火车站	huǒchēzhàn	railway station
码头	mǎtóu	port; dock

长途汽车站	chángtú qìchē zhàn	long-distance bus station
花园路	Huāyuán Lù	Huayuan Road
北京路	Běijīng Lù	Beijing Road
长安街	Cháng'ān Jiē	Chang'an Avenue
左	zuǒ	left
右	yòu	right
东	dōng	east
南	nán	south
西	xī	west
北	běi	north

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. ——去机场多少钱?

   Qù jīchǎng duōshao qián?

长途汽车站
chángtú qìchē zhàn
码头
mǎtóu
火车站
huǒchē zhàn
北京饭店
Běijīng Fàndiàn

——50 块。

Wǔshí kuài.

2. 走高速公路，到出口往右拐。

Zǒu gāosù gōnglù, dào chūkǒu wǎng yòu guǎi.

花园路	左
Huāyuán Lù	zuǒ
北京路	东
Běijīng Lù	dōng
长安街	右
Cháng'ān Jiē	yòu
四环路	西
Sìhuán Lù	xī

三、能力训练（Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.）

1. 你想向出租汽车司机要发票。

   Nǐ xiǎng xiàng chūzū qìchē sījī yào fāpiào.

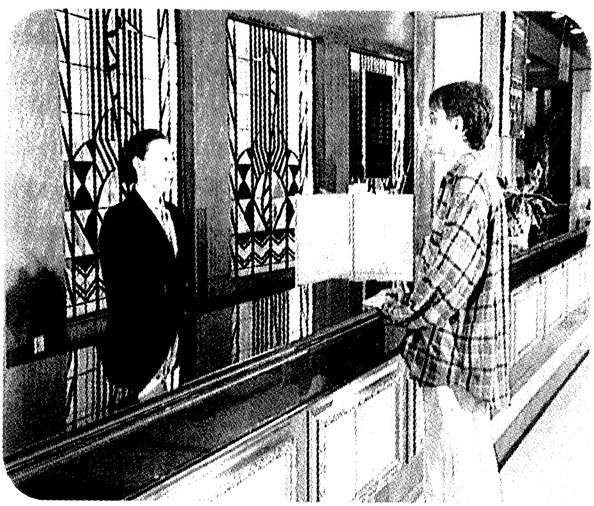
   You want to ask for a receipt from a taxi driver.

2. 从你现在的位置去厕所怎么走？

   Cóng nǐ xiànzài de wèizhì qù cèsuǒ zěnme zǒu?

   Give directions to the bathroom from where you are now.

第五课　换　钱
Dì-wǔ Kè　Huàn Qián
Lesson 5　Money Exchange



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 今天……换多少人民币？
   Jīntiān ……huàn duōshao Rénmínbì?
2. 请给我……(面值)的钞票。
   Qǐng gěi wǒ……(miànzhí)de chāopiào.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is an foreign student wanting to exchange money at th
bank.)

留学生:小姐,今天一美元换多少人民币?

Xiǎojiě,jīntiān yì Měiyuán huàn duōshao Rénmínbì?

Miss, what is today's exchange rate for an American dollar

营业员:今天一美元兑换 8.27 元人民币。你换多少?

Jīntiān yì Měiyuán duìhuàn bā diǎn èr qī yuá
Rénmínbì. Nǐ huàn duōshao?

Today's rate is RMB 8.27 for one US dollar. How muc
do you want to exchange?

留学生:我换 200 美元。

Wǒ huàn èrbǎi Měiyuán.

I want to exchange US $ 200.

营业员:一共是 1 654 块,请数一下。

Yígòng shì yìqiān liùbǎi wǔshísì kuài,qǐng shǔ yíxià.

The total is 1,654 yuan. Please count it.

会话二

(Here, a customer wants to cash a traveler's check.)

旅　客:小姐,我想把这张支票换成人民币。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ xiǎng bǎ zhè zhāng zhīpiào huànchéng
Rénmínbì.

Miss, I would like to cash this check for RMB.

营业员：请把你的护照给我看一下。

Qǐng bǎ nǐ de hùzhào gěi wǒ kàn yíxià.

Please show me your passport.

旅　客：给你。请给我二十元和五十元面值的钞票。

Gěi nǐ. Qǐng gěi wǒ èrshí yuán hé wǔshí yuán miànzhí de chāopiào.

Here it is. Please give me in twenty and fifty-yuan bills.

营业员：请你在这张纸上签一下名。

Qǐng nǐ zài zhè zhāng zhǐ shang qiān yíxià míng.

Please sign your name on this paper.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

人民币	Rénmínbì	RMB; Chinese currency
美元	Měiyuán	American dollar
英镑	Yīngbàng	British pound
日元	Rìyuán	Japanese yen
欧元	Ōuyuán	Euro
支票	zhīpiào	cheque; check
现金	xiànjīn	cash
零钱	língqián	small change; small value banknote
硬币	yìngbì	coin

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 今天一美元换多少人民币?

   Jīntiān yì Měiyuán huàn duōshao Rénmínbì?

一英镑
yì Yīngbàng
一欧元
yì Ōuyuán
一百日元
yìbǎi Rìyuán
五百美元
wǔbǎi Měiyuán

2. 请给我二十元和五十元(面值)的钞票。

   Qǐng gěi wǒ èrshí yuán hé wǔshí yuán (miànzhí) de chāopiào.

一百元	现金
yìbǎi yuán	xiànjīn
两块和五块	钞票
liǎng kuài hé wǔ kuài	chāopiào
五千元	支票
wǔqiān yuán	zhīpiào
一元和两元	硬币
yì yuán hé liǎng yuán	yìngbì

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 询问今天美元与人民币的牌价。

   Xúnwèn jīntiān Měiyuán yǔ Rénmínbì de páijià.

   You want to know the exchange rate between the US dollar and the RMB.

2. 你要把支票换成人民币现金,怎么说?

   Nǐ yào bǎ zhīpiào huànchéng Rénmínbì xiànjīn, zěnme shuō?

   What do you say when you want to cash your check into RMB?



第六课　天　气
Dì-liù Kè　Tiānqì
Lesson 6　Weather



句型　Sentence pattern:

1. ……,最高气温……度。
……, zuì gāo qìwēn……dù.
2. ……,有……。
……, yǒu…….



你知道吗? Do you know?

中国各地的气候差别非常大,冬天中国的最北和最南的温度可能会相差 50℃。电视、报纸、广播都会不停地介绍各地的天气。也可以拨打当地的 121,电话查询天气预报,除了汉语的,也可以听到英语的预报。

Climate varies a lot in different areas of China. In winter there might be a 50 degrees' difference between the temperatures of the northmost area and the southmost area. Weather reports are given on TV, in newspapers and on the radio. You can also dial 121 to listen to the weather report either in Chinese or English.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 天气	tiānqì	weather
2. 预报	yùbào	forecast
3. 阴	yīn	overcast
4. 转	zhuǎn	to turn; to shift; to change
5. 晴	qíng	fine; clear
6. 气温	qìwēn	air temperature; atmospheric temperature
7. 多云	duō yún	cloudy

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 明天晴转阴,有雨夹雪,最高气温1度。

Míngtiān qíng zhuǎn yīn, yǒu yǔ jiā xuě, zuì gāo qìwēn yī dù.

Tomorrow is sunny to overcast. There will be rain and snow. The highest temperature will be one degree.

- Weather is one of the most common topics in many countries, and it is the same case in China. When listening to a weather report, we usually will hear something like this: Míngtiān qíng zhuǎn yīn, yǒu yǔ jiā xuě, zuì gāo qìwēn yī dù. Here are more of the useful examples:

(1) 明天阴,有雪,最高气温0度。

Míngtiān yīn, yǒu xuě, zuì gāo qìwēn líng dù.

Tomorrow is overcast with snow. The highest temperature will be zero degree.

(2) 今天阴转晴,没有风,最高气温10度。

Jīntiān yīn zhuǎn qíng, méiyǒu fēng, zuì gāo qìwēn shí dù.

Today is overcast to sunny and no wind. The highest temperature will be ten degree.

2. 上海明天阴转多云,有雾。

Shànghǎi míngtiān yīn zhuǎn duō yún, yǒu wù.

Tomorrow, Shanghai will be overcast to cloudy with fog.

- When listening to the weather forecast of a city, we probably

will hear something like: Shànghǎi míngtiān yīn zhuǎn duōyún, yǒu wù. Here are more examples:

(1) 北京明天阴,有雨。

Běijīng míngtiān yīn, yǒu yǔ.

Tomorrow Beijing will be overcast and rainy.

(2) 天津这几天多云,有雪。

Tiānjīn zhè jǐ tiān duō yún, yǒu xuě.

Over the next few days Tianjin will be cloudy and snowy.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here are some people talking about the weather.)

女士: 这几天天气真冷!

Zhè jǐ tiān tiānqì zhēn lěng!

The weather has been really cold lately!

男士: 电视上的天气预报说,明天晴转阴,有雨夹雪,最高气温1度。

Diànshì shang de tiānqì yùbào shuō, míngtiān qíng zhuǎn yīn, yǒu yǔ jiā xuě, zuì gāo qìwēn yī dù.

I heard from the weather report on TV that tomorrow is going to be sunny to overcast with rain and snow. The highest temperature will be one degree.

女士: 明天我去上海,不知道天气怎么样。

Míngtiān wǒ qù Shànghǎi, bù zhīdao tiānqì zěnmeyàng.

I am going to Shanghai tomorrow. I don't know what the weather is like there.

男士：上海明天阴转多云，有雾，但是气温比北京高，15度。

Shànghǎi míngtiān yīn zhuǎn duō yún, yǒu wù, dànshì qìwēn bǐ Běijīng gāo, shí wǔ dù.

Tomorrow Shanghai will be overcast to cloudy and foggy, but, the temperature will be higher than Beijing's. It will be fifteen degree.

女士：太好了，我不怕热，就怕冷。

Tài hǎo le, wǒ bú pà rè, jiù pà lěng.

That's great. I hate cold weather, but I don't mind the heat.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

晴	qíng	fine; clear
阴	yīn	overcast
雨	yǔ	rain; rainy
雪	xuě	snow
雾	wù	fog
风	fēng	wind
多云	duō yún	cloudy
晴转阴	qíng zhuǎn yīn	sunny to overcast
雨夹雪	yǔ jiā xuě	rain and snow
中到大雨	zhōng dào dà yǔ	moderate to heavy rain
阴转多云	yīn zhuǎn duō yún	overcast to cloudy
最高气温	zuì gāo qìwēn	the highest temperature

最低气温	zuì dī qìwēn	the lowest temperature
1(摄氏)度	yī(shèshì)dù	1 degree (celcius)
15(摄氏)度	shíwǔ(shèshì)dù	15 degrees (celcius)
30(摄氏)度	sānshí(shèshì)dù	30 degrees (celcius)

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 明天晴转阴,有雨加雪,最高气温1 度。
   Míngtiān qíng zhuǎn yīn, yǒu yǔ jiā xuě, zuì gāo qìwēn yī dù.

明天阴	有雾	20
Míngtiān yīn	yǒu wù	èrshí
今天多云转晴	没有风	12
jīntiān duō yún zhuǎn qíng	méiyǒu fēng	shí'èr
阴	中到大雨	15
yīn	zhōng dào dà yǔ	shíwǔ
今天下午晴	有阵雨	31
jīntiān xiàwǔ qíng	yǒu zhènyǔ	sānshíyī

2. 上海明天阴转多云,有雾。
   Shànghǎi míngtiān yīn zhuǎn duōyún, yǒu wù.

天津明天多云转阴	小雪
Tiānjīn míngtiān duō yún zhuǎn yīn	xiǎo xuě
香港这几天多云	雨
Xiānggǎng zhè jǐ tiān duō yún	yǔ
广州今天晴	风
Guǎngzhōu jīntiān qíng	fēng
昆明明天晴转阴	大雨
Kūnmíng míngtiān qíng zhuǎn yīn	dà yǔ

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你喜欢什么天气？不喜欢什么天气？

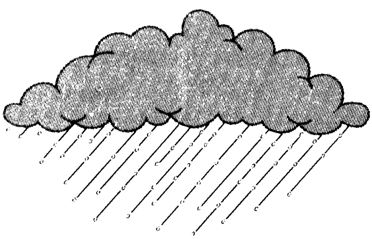
   Nǐ xǐhuan shénme tiānqì? Bù xǐhuan shénme tiānqì?

   What weather do you like? And what weather do you dislike?

2. 说说这几天的天气。

   Shuōshuō zhè jǐ tiān de tiānqì.

   Talk about what the weather has been like recently.



第七课　预订房间

Dì-qī Kè　Yùdìng Fángjiān

Lesson 7　Room Reservation



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想预订……。

   Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng…… .

2. ……住一天多少钱?

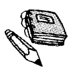
   ……zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?



你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国,中等以上城市和一些旅游地区,都有很多宾馆。中国政府目前规定,外国人只能住在指定的涉外宾馆。(这一状况正在改变。)但在北京等地也有“青年旅馆”,比较便宜,外国人也可以住。

There are many hotels in intermediate and big cities and tourist areas in China. Government regulations state that foreigners can only live in designated and authorized hotels. (This situation is inclined to change.) There are “Youth Clubs” in Beijing and some other cities which are much cheaper, and foreigners can also live there.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 预订	yùdìng	to reserve; to make a reservation; to book
2. 标准间	biāozhǔnjiān	standard room
3. 单人间	dānrénjiān	single room
4. 套间	tàojiān	a hotel suite
5. 空	kòng	vacant (room)



常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想预订一个标准间。

Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng yí gè biāozhǔnjiān.

I would like to reserve a standard room.

- When you want to reserve a room or make a reservation with a hotel, a restaurant or a travel agency through a telephone call or in person, you can say: "Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng……."

  The following are more examples:

  (1) 我想预订两个单人间。

  Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng liǎng gè dānrénjiān.

  I would like to reserve two single rooms.

  (2) 我想预订一个套间。

  Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng yí gè tàojiān.

  I would like to make a reservation for one suite room.

2. 标准间住一天多少钱?

Biāozhǔnjiān zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?

What is the rate for one night in a standard room?

- When you want to reserve a hotel room, you can ask about a room's rate by saying: "……zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?"

  Here are the examples:

  (1) 单人间住一天多少钱?

  Dānrénjiān zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?

  What is the rate per night for a single room?

  (2) 套间住一天多少钱?

  Tàojiān zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?

  What is the rate for a suite for one night?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer calling a hotel to reserve a room.)

服务员：您好！这里是长城饭店。

Nín hǎo! Zhèlǐ shì Chángchéng Fàndiàn!

Hello! This is the Great Wall Hotel.

男 士：你好！我想预订一个标准间。

Nǐ hǎo! Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng yí gè biāozhǔnjiān.

Hello! I'd like to reserve a standard room.

服务员：您打算住多长时间？

Nín dǎsuan zhù duō cháng shíjiān?

How long do you plan to stay?

男 士：2月3号到7号。一天多少钱？

Èr yuè sān hào dào qī hào. Yì tiān duōshao qián?

From February 3rd till 7th. How much does it cost per night?

服务员：有50美元的，也有80美元的。

Yǒu wǔshí Měiyuán de, yě yǒu bāshí Měiyuán de.

We have 50 and 80-dollar standard rooms.

男 士：我要一间50美元的。

Wǒ yào yì jiān wǔshí Měiyuán de.

I'll take a 50-dollar room.

会话二

(Here are a couple asking whether still have a vacant room.)

男 士：你好，我们没有预订，请问这里有空房间吗？

Nǐ hǎo, wǒmen méiyǒu yùdìng, qǐngwèn zhèli yǒu kòng fángjiān ma?

Hello! We don't have a reservation. Are there any vacancies?

服务员：有，我们这儿有单人间、标准间和四人套间。

Yǒu, wǒmen zhèr yǒu dānrénjiān, biāozhǔnjiān hé sì rén tàojiān.

Yes. We have single rooms, standard rooms and four-person suites.

男　士：标准间住一天多少钱？

Biāozhǔnjiān zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?

What is the standard room's rate for one night stay?

服务员：268 块。

Èrbǎi liùshíbā kuài.

Two hundred and sixty eight yuan.

男　士：好，我们要一个标准间。

Hǎo, wǒmen yào yí gè biāozhǔnjiān.

Good! We will take a standard room.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

房间	fángjiān	room
标准间	biāozhǔnjiān	standard room
包间	bāojiān	chartered room at restaurant, theatre, etc.
火车票	huǒchē piào	train ticket
飞机票	fēijī piào	airplane ticket
套间	tàojiān	hotel suite
单人间	dānrénjiān	single room

双人间	shuāngrénjiān	double room
三人间	sānrénjiān	triple room
宿舍	sùshè	dormitory
公寓	gōngyù	apartment; flat

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想预订一个标准间。

   Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng yí gè biāozhǔnjiān.

一个包间
yí gè bāojiān
一个房间
yí gè fángjiān
一个三人间
yí gè sānrénjiān
一张飞机票
yì zhāng fēijī piào

2. 标准间住一天多少钱?

   Biāozhǔnjiān zhù yì tiān duōshao qián?

套间
tàojiān
宿舍
sùshè
单人间
dānrénjiān
这个房间
zhège fángjiān

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你要预定一个每天 20 美元的房间,时间是下个月 20 日到 25 日。

   Nǐ yào yùdìng yí gè měi tiān èrshí Měiyuán de fángjiān, shíjiān shì xià gè yuè èrshí rì dào èrshíwǔ rì.

   You would like to reserve a $ 20-per-day room from 20th to 25th next month.

2. 你想问双人间的价钱。

   Nǐ xiǎng wèn shuāngrénjiān de jiàqián.

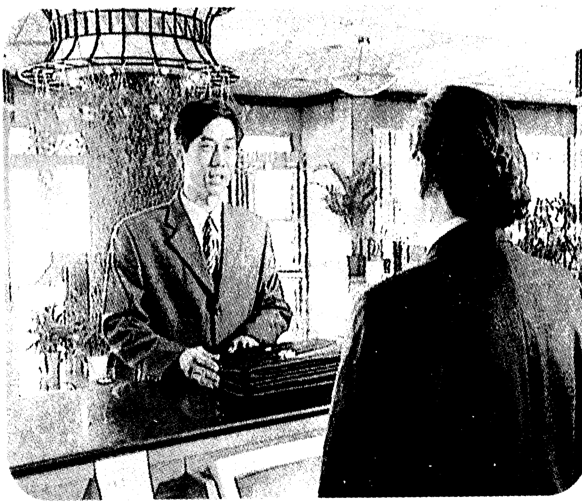
   You would like to know the price of a double room.



第八课　订房有误

Dì-bā Kè　　Dìng Fáng Yǒu Wù

Lesson 8　Room Reservation Errors



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 你们能帮我……吗?

   Nǐmen néng bāng wǒ……ma?

2. 那么给我……吧。

   Nàme gěi wǒ……ba.

你知道吗? Do you know?

在饭店订房,有的时候可能订不到你想要的房间,你可以请接待员帮忙换成别的等级的房间,或者请他们帮忙联系其他酒店。在旅游旺季,最好提前一些天订房间。

Sometimes if you can't book the kind of room you want you can ask to the receptionist to help you change to another kind of room, or to contact other hotels. You had better book your room a few days in advance during the tourist season.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 帮	bāng	to help; to assist
2. 联系	liánxì	to contact
3. 当然	dāngrán	of course, certainly
4. 满	mǎn	full

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你们能帮我联系别的饭店吗?
   Nǐmen néng bāng wǒ liánxì biéde fàndiàn ma?
   Can you help me contact other hotels?
   - If you need any help, you can use this structure to say: "nǐ (men) néng bāng wǒ ……ma?" The following are more examples:

(1)你们能帮我联系出租汽车吗?

Nǐmen néng bāng wǒ liánxì chūzū qìchē ma?

Can you help me contact a taxi?

(2)你们能帮我预订明天的机票吗?

Nǐmen néng bāng wǒ yùdìng míngtiān de jīpiào ma?

Can you help me book a plane ticket for tomorrow?

2. 那么给我换一个单人间吧。

Nàme gěi wǒ huàn yí gè dānrénjiān ba.

In that case, I'd like to switch to a single room.

- When you encounter an unexpected situation, you may deal with it by saying: "Nàme gěi wǒ……ba." Here are some examples:

(1)那么给我换一个标准间吧。

Nàme gěi wǒ huàn yí gè biāozhǔnjiān ba.

In that case, please let me switch to a standard room.

(2)那么给我预订后天的机票吧。

Nàme gěi wǒ yùdìng hòutiān de jīpiào ba.

In that case, please book me an airline ticket for the day after tomorrow.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(At the hotel)

服务员:先生,您好!

Xiānsheng, nín hǎo!

Hello, Sir.

男　士：你好，小姐！我叫王军，我在你们这里预订了房间。

Nǐ hǎo, xiǎojiě! Wǒ jiào Wáng Jūn, wǒ zài nǐmen zhèlǐ yùdìng le fángjiān.

Hello! My name is Wang Jun. I have a room reservation here.

(After a moment)

服务员：对不起，我们这里没有您的姓名。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen zhèlǐ méiyǒu nín de xìngmíng.

Sorry, I can't find your name.

男　士：你们能帮我联系别的饭店吗？

Nǐmen néng bāng wǒ liánxì biéde fàndiàn ma?

Can you help me contact another hotels?

服务员：当然可以。

Dāngrán kěyǐ.

Yes, of course.

会话二

服务员：晚上好！

Wǎnshang hǎo!

Good evening!

男　士：你好，小姐。我昨天打电话预订了一个标准间。

Nǐ hǎo, xiǎojiě. Wǒ zuótiān dǎ diànhuà yùdìng le yí gè biāozhǔnjiān.

I called up yesterday to reserve a standard room.

服务员：对不起，我们的标准间都住满了。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen de biāozhǔnjiān dōu zhù mǎn le.

Sorry, our standard rooms are all occupied.

男　士：那么给我换一个单人间吧。

Nàme gěi wǒ huàn yí gè dānrénjiān ba.

In that case, please let me change to a single room.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

联系	liánxì	to contact
换	huàn	to change
找	zhǎo	to look for
饭店	fàndiàn	hotel, restaurant
宾馆	bīnguǎn	guesthouse; hotel
学校	xuéxiào	school
公司	gōngsī	company
办公室	bàngōngshì	office
桌子	zhuōzi	desk; table
座位	zuòwèi	seat
床	chuáng	bed
椅子	yǐzi	chair

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你(们)能帮我联系别的饭店吗?

   Nǐ(men) néng bāng wǒ liánxì biéde fàndiàn ma?

   换一个房间
   huàn yí gè fángjiān

找一家宾馆
zhǎo yì jiā bīnguǎn
买汉语书
mǎi Hànyǔ shū
联系别的公司
liánxì biéde gōngsī

2. 那么给我换一个单人间吧。

Nàme gěi wǒ huàn yí gè dānrénjiān ba.

换一张桌子
huàn yì zhāng zhuōzi
看一下你的护照
kàn yíxià nǐ de hùzhào
联系别的学校
liánxì biéde xuéxiào
拿两本
ná liǎng běn

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你请服务员为你联系一个别的饭店。

Nǐ qǐng fúwùyuán wèi nǐ liánxì yí gè biéde fàndiàn.

You ask the personnel in the hotel to contact another hotel.

2. 你想换一个便宜的房间。

Nǐ xiǎng huàn yí gè piányi de fángjiān.

You would like to change to a cheaper room.

第九课　客房登记

Dì-jiǔ Kè　　Kèfáng Dēngjì

Lesson 9　Check in



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……你看这样写对吗?

　……nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?

2. ……什么时候可以……?

　……shénme shíhou kěyǐ……?

你知道吗？Do you know?

入住酒店要提供护照，填写登记表，交入住押金。一般情况上，酒店的表格都有中英两种文字，不必为不认识汉字而担心。结账时应该在中午 12 点以前。

When you check in to a hotel your need to present your passport, fill out the registration form and pay the deposit. Normally the form is in both Chinese and English, so you do not need to worry if you cannot read Chinese. You should check out before 12 o'clock noon.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 入住	rùzhù	to check in
2. 填	tián	to fill in
3. 住房登记卡	zhùfáng dēngjì kǎ	registration form
4. 房卡	fángkǎ	room card
5. 钥匙	yàoshi	key
6. 押金	yājīn	deposit
7. 退房	tuì fáng	to check out from hotel
8. 结账	jié zhàng	to settle the bill

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 姓名、护照号码，你看这样写对吗？
Xìngmíng, hùzhào hàomǎ, nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?
Have I written my name and passport number correctly?

● In China, people are supposed to write their names and identity numbers in the registration card when checking into a hotel. As for a foreigner, apart from name, passport number, length of stay, if one wants to know whether he/she correctly fills in information in the registration form, he/she can ask a question like this: "……nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?" The following are more examples:

(1) 姓名、电话，你看这样写对吗？

Xìngmíng, diànhuà, nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?

Have I written my name and telephone number correctly?

(2) 姓名、地址，你看这样写对吗？

Xìngmíng, dìzhǐ, nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?

Have I written my name and address correctly?

2. 我明天什么时候可以结账？

Wǒ míngtiān shénme shíhou kěyǐ jié zhàng?

What time can I check out tomorrow?

● When you want to ask when you can or should do something, you can ask a question like this "……shénme shíhou kěyǐ……?" Here are the examples:

(1) 餐厅什么时候(可以)开门？

Cāntīng shénme shíhou (kěyǐ) kāi mén?

When is the dining room/restaurant open?

(2) 你们什么时候(可以)打扫房间？

Nǐmen shénme shíhou (kěyǐ) dǎsǎo fángjiān?

What time can you clean up the room?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer asking how to fill in the registration form.)

服务员:您需要填一张住房登记卡。在这里写上您的名字。

Nín xūyào tián yì zhāng zhùfáng dēngjì kǎ. Zài zhèlǐ xiě shàng nín de míngzi.

You need to fill in a registration form. Please write your name here.

旅　客:姓名、护照号码、居住时间,你看这样写对吗?

Xìngmíng, hùzhào hàomǎ, jūzhù shíjiān, nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?

Have I written my name, passport number and length of stay correctly?

服务员:对。这是您的房卡,请拿好。

Duì. Zhè shì nín de fángkǎ, qǐng ná hǎo.

That's correct. Here is your room card. Please don't lose it.

会话二

(Here, a customer is asking some questions at the reception counter.)

服务员:请填写一下你的姓名和护照号码,还要交 50 块钱的钥匙押金。

Qǐng tiánxiě yíxià nǐ de xìngmíng hé hùzhào hàomǎ, háiyào jiāo wǔshí kuài qián de yàoshi yājīn.

Please write your name and passport number here. You

also need to leave a 50-yuan deposit for the key.

旅　客：给你。我明天什么时候可以结账？退房的时候押金还给我吗？

Gěi nǐ. Wǒ míngtiān shénme shíhou kěyǐ jié zhàng? Tuì fáng de shíhou yājīn huán gěi wǒ ma?

Here it is (the filled-in registration form and deposit). What time can I check out tomorrow? Will you return the deposit to me when I check out?

服务员：中午12点以前结账，押金退房的时候还。

Zhōngwǔ shí'èr diǎn yǐqián jié zhàng, yājīn tuì fáng de shíhou huán.

You may check out before 12:00 pm. The deposit will be returned to you when you check out.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

姓名	xìngmíng	name
地址	dìzhǐ	address
性别	xìngbié	sex
国籍	guójí	nationality
出生年月	chūshēng niányuè	date of birth
电话号码	diànhuà hàomǎ	telephone number
护照号码	hùzhào hàomǎ	passport number
房间号码	fángjiān hàomǎ	room number

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 姓名、护照号码,你看这样写对吗?

   Xìngmíng, hùzhào hàomǎ, nǐ kàn zhèyàng xiě duì ma?

姓名、地址
Xìngmíng, dìzhǐ
姓名、国籍、电话号码
Xìngmíng, guójí, diànhuà hàomǎ
姓名、性别、国籍
Xìngmíng, xìngbié, guójí
姓名、性别、出生年月
Xìngmíng, xìngbié, chūshēng nián yuè

2. 我明天什么时候(可以)结账?

   Wǒ míngtiān shénme shíhou (kěyǐ) jié zhàng?

你	来
nǐ	lái
我	换钱
wǒ	huàn qián
我们	退房
wǒmen	tuì fáng
他	还钥匙
tā	huán yàoshi

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你问朋友,你写的地址对不对。

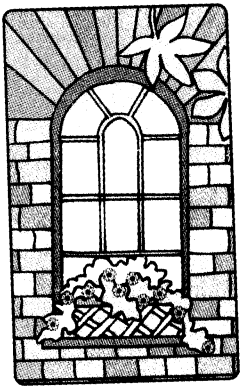
   Nǐ wèn péngyou, nǐ xiě de dìzhǐ duì bú duì.

   You ask your friend if the address you wrote is correct.

2. 你问一下服务员什么时候可以结账。

Nǐ wèn yíxià fúwùyuán shénme shíhou kěyǐ jié zhàng.

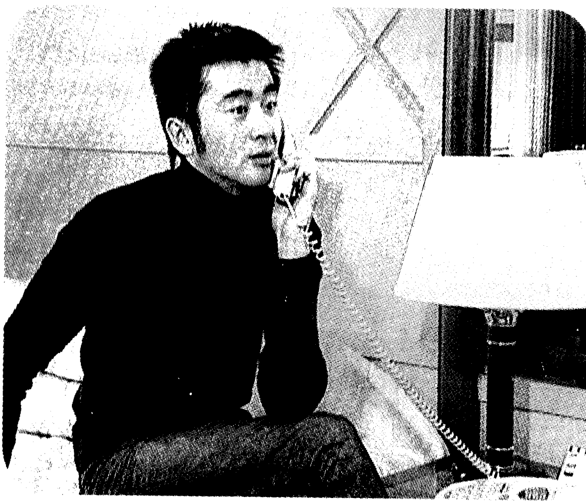
You ask the receptiouist what time you should check out.



第十课　换房与报修

Dì-shí Kè　Huàn Fáng yǔ Bào Xiū

Lesson 10　Room Change and Request a Repair



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我房间的……。

   Wǒ fángjiān de…… .

2. 请你找人帮我……。

   Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ……



你知道吗？Do you know?

如果你住的房间有问题，只要向服务员提出来，一般都会得到解决，免费修理或者换房间。如果你弄坏了房间里的东西，就要赔偿了。

If you have trouble with your room you should go to the hotel staff. Free repairs and room changes are offered. If you break something in the room you must reimburse the hotel according to its value.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 租	zū	to rent
2. 修(理)	xiū(lǐ)	to repair; to fix
3. 下水道	xiàshuǐdào	plumbing; drainage
4. 堵	dǔ	to block up(of toilets)
5. 灯	dēng	light
6. 派	pài	to send; to dispatch



常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我房间的窗户关不上。
Wǒ fángjiān de chuānghu guān bú shàng.
The window in my room won't close.
● If there is something in the room that does not work properly, and you need it repaired or changed, you can let the hotel

staff know by saying: "Wǒ fángjiān de…… ." The following are more examples:

(1) 我房间的门关不上。

Wǒ fángjiān de mén guān bú shàng.

The door in my room won't close.

(2) 我房间的电视机坏了。

Wǒ fángjiān de diànshìjī huài le.

The TV set in my room does not work.

2. 请你找人帮我修一下厕所的灯。

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ xiū yíxià cèsuǒ de dēng.

Please get someone to come to repair the light in the bathroom.

- When you have a requirement or need someone to fix something in your room, you can ask the receptionist like this: "Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ…… ." Here are some examples:

(1) 请你找人帮我修一下门。

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ xiū yíxià mén.

Please send somebody to repair the door.

(2) 请你找人帮我换一个电视机。

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ huàn yí gè diànshìjī.

Please send somebody to change the TV set.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a foreign student asks a staffmember for help.)

留学生:小姐,我房间的窗户关不上。我可以换一个房间吗
Xiǎojiě, wǒ fángjiān de chuānghu guān bú shàng. W
kěyǐ huàn yí gè fángjiān ma?
Miss, the window in my room won't close. May I cha
to a different room?
服务员:您住几号房间?
Nín zhù jǐ hào fángjiān?
What is your room number?
留学生:127。
Yāo èr qī.
One Two Seven.
服务员:对不起,单人间都租出去了,有双人间,您要吗?
Duìbuqǐ, dānrénjiān dōu zū chūqu le,
shuāngrénjiān, nín yào ma?
Sorry. The single rooms are all occupied. There are
standard rooms. Do you want one?
留学生:那算了,你找人帮我修一下吧。
Nà suàn le, nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ xiū yíxià ba.
In that case, please send somebody to fix it.

会话二

(Here is a customer calling the receptionist for help.)
旅　客:小姐,我房间里没有热水。
Xiǎojiě, wǒ fángjiān lǐ méiyǒu rèshuǐ.
Miss, my room does not have hot water.
服务员:我们马上给您送。
Wǒmen mǎshàng gěi nín sòng.
We will send it to you right away.

旅　客：另外，房间厕所里的下水道堵住了，灯也不亮了，你能不能找人来修一下？

Lìngwài, fángjiān cèsuǒ lǐ de xiàshuǐdào dǔzhù le, dēng yě bú liàng le, nǐ néng bù néng zhǎo rén lái xiū yíxià?

Also my toilet is blocked and the light does not work, can you send somebody to fix them?

服务员：我们马上派人去修。

Wǒmen mǎshàng pài rén qù xiū.

We will send someone to fix them immediately.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

窗户	chuānghu	window
门	mén	door
电视机	diànshìjī	televison set
空调	kōngtiáo	air conditioner
下水道	xiàshuǐdào	plumbing; drainage
水龙头	shuǐlóngtóu	water tap; faucet
灯	dēng	light
电话(机)	diànhuà(jī)	telephone(set)
检查	jiǎnchá	to check

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我房间的窗户关不上。

   Wǒ fángjiān de chuānghu guān bú shàng.

下水道堵了
xiàshuǐdào dǔ le
厕所的灯坏了
cèsuǒ de dēng huài le
桌子坏了
zhuōzi huài le
电话坏了
diànhuà huài le

2. 请你找人帮我修一下厕所的灯。

Qǐng nǐ zhǎo rén bāng wǒ xiū yíxià cèsuǒ de dēng.

修	下水道
xiū	xiàshuǐdào
修理	空调
xiūlǐ	kōngtiáo
换	水龙头
huàn	shuǐlóngtóu
检查	电话
jiǎnchá	diànhuà

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你房间的灯坏了,你怎么告诉服务员?

   Nǐ fángjiān de dēng huài le, nǐ zěnme gàosu fúwùyuán?

   How do you tell the personnel that the light in your room is broken?

2. 下水道坏了,你让饭店的工人来修理。

   Xiàshuǐdào huài le, nǐ ràng fàndiàn de gōngrén lái xiūlǐ.

   You ask the plumber to fix the sink in your room.

第十一课 运 动

Dì-shí yī Kè Yùndòng

Lesson 11 Sports



句型 Sentence Pattern:

1. 我是和……一起去的。

   Wǒ shì hé ……yìqǐ qù de.

2. ……对……有/没兴趣。

   ……duì ……yǒu /méi xìngqù.



你知道吗？Do you know?

中国现在推广“全民健身运动”，各地建立了很多体育场馆，社区也有很多健身器械，供人们使用。早晨公园里有很多人练太极拳，北方地区有的地方，街上还有人扭秧歌。篮球、排球、足球、乒乓球、羽毛球，是中国人最喜欢的球类；还有一些人喜欢冬泳，冬天0℃以下还在湖里游泳，他们认为这样对身体有好处。

China is promoting the mass sports activities and has built many stadiums and gymnasiums in many places. There are also many public sports facilities in many communities. In the morning there are many people that can be seen practising *Tai Chi* in the parks. In northern areas people often do *yangge*, a kind of folk dance in China. Chinese people like ball games very much, such as basketball, volleyball, soccer, table tennis and badminton. Some people like winter swimming. They even swim in the lake when the temperature is below 0 degree. They think it is good for their health.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 运动	yùndòng	exercise; sports; movement
2. 保龄球	bǎolíngqiú	bowling
3. 实际上	shíjìshang	in fact; in practice; in reality; actually
4. 兴趣	xìngqù	interest
5. 比较	bǐjiào	comparatively; fairly
6. 最	zuì	indicating the superlative degree

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我是和公司的客人一起去的。

   Wǒ shì hé gōngsī de kèrén yìqǐ qù de.

   The company's client and I went together.

   - Do you like sports? Many people cannot live without sports. Sometimes, a sport is just a part of your job. You may be interested in some sports. You may also play a kind of sports with your friends or your clients. When you are going out to play a kind of sports with someone such as your customer, you will say: "Wǒ shì hé gōngsī de kèrén yìqǐ qù de." The following are more examples:

     (1) 我是和他一起去的。

     Wǒ shì hé tā yìqǐ qù de.

     He and I went together.

     (2) 我是和弟弟一起去的。

     Wǒ shì hé dìdi yìqǐ qù de.

     My younger brother and I went together.

2. 我对足球没兴趣。

   Wǒ duì zúqiú méi xìngqù.

   I am not interested in football.

   - If you enjoy certain sports, you can use this following structure to express your interest: "Wǒ duì…… yǒu/méi(you) xìngqù." Here are more examples:

(1) 他对篮球很有兴趣。

Tā duì lánqiú hěn yǒu xìngqù.

He is quite interested in basketball.

(2) 我对跑步没有兴趣。

Wǒ duì pǎobù méiyǒu xìngqù.

I don't enjoy jogging.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(The speakers are talking about sports while they are exercising.)

男士:昨天晚上,你去打保龄球了, 是吗?

Zuótiān wǎnshang, nǐ qù dǎ bǎolíngqiú le, shì ma?

You went bowling last night, didn't you?

女士:是,我是和公司的客人一起去的。实际上,我最喜欢游泳。你呢?

Shì, wǒ shì hé gōngsī de kèrén yìqǐ qù de. Shíjìshang, wǒ zuì xǐhuan yóuyǒng. Nǐ ne?

Yes, I did. I went with the company's clients. Actually, I like swimming best. How about you?

男士:我最喜欢跑步。

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan pǎobù.

I like jogging the most.

女士:别的呢?

Biéde ne?

Anything else?

男士:我也比较喜欢网球和篮球,我对足球没兴趣。

Wǒ yě bǐjiào xǐhuan wǎngqiú hé lánqiú, wǒ duì zúqiú

méi xìngqù.

I also like tennis and basketball. I am not interested in foot ball.

女士:是吗？不喜欢足球的男人可是不太多。

Shì ma? Bù xǐhuan zúqiú de nánrén kěshì bú tài duō.

Really? There are not many men who don't like football.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

网球	wǎngqiú	tennis
篮球	lánqiú	basketball
足球	zúqiú	football
排球	páiqiú	volleyball
游泳	yóuyǒng	swim; to swim
跑步	pǎobù	jogging
保龄球	bǎolíngqiú	bowling
跳舞	tiàowǔ	dancing; to dance
骑马	qí mǎ	riding horse
健身	jiànshēn	to build up one's strength; to get in shape
客人	kèrén	customer; client
朋友	péngyou	friend
家人	jiārén	dependents; family members
妻子	qīzi	wife
上司	shàngsi	superior; boss

第十二课　在前台留口信

Dì-shíèr Kè　Zài Qiántái Liú Kǒuxìn

Lesson 12　Leave a Message at the Front Desk



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 请你转告……。

   Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào…… .

2. 我想给……留个口信。

   Wǒ xiǎng gěi……liú gè kǒuxìn.

你知道吗？Do you know?

中国的酒店很国际化，在酒店的前台，可以给你的客人留言，也可以帮助转达别人给你的留言。接待员还可以回答关于所在城市和地区的常见问题，有任何问题都可以去服务台咨询。

In the internationalized hotels in China, you can leave messages for your guest, or receive messages from your friends. The hotel also answers questions about the city and surrounding areas. If you have any questions, you can ask the staff at the information counter.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 前台	qiántái	front desk
2. 口信	kǒuxìn	oral message
3. 亲戚	qīnqi	relatives
4. 转告	zhuǎngào	to pass on a message (to a person)

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 请你转告他我下午4点回来。
   Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào tā wǒ xiàwǔ sì diǎn huílai.
   Please tell him that I will be back at 4.00 pm.
   - Someone is coming to see you at the hotel, but you have to go out. So, you will need to leave a message at the reception desk. You can ask the receptionist to convey your message to

that person like this: "Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào…… ." The following are more examples:

(1) 请你转告他我回家了。

Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào tā wǒ huíjiā le.

Please tell him I have already left for home.

(2) 请你转告他我明天再来看他。

Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào tā wǒ míngtiān zài lái kàn tā.

Please tell him I will see him again tomorrow.

2. 我想给 415 房间的客人留个口信。

Wǒ xiǎng gěi sì yāo wǔ fángjiān de kèrén liú gè kǒuxìn.

I would like to leave a message for the guest staying in room 415.

● If you go to visit a friend, and he/she is not in, you will then want to leave a message. You can say: "Wǒ xiǎng gěi ……liú gè kǒuxìn." Here are some examples:

(1) 我想给 415 宿舍的张先生留个口信。

Wǒ xiǎng gěi sì yāo wǔ sùshè de Zhāng xiānsheng liú gè kǒuxìn.

I would like to leave a message for Mr. Zhang staying in room 415.

(2) 我想给你们的张经理留个口信。

Wǒ xiǎng gěi nǐmen de Zhāng jīnglǐ liú gè kǒuxìn.

I would like to leave a message for your manager, Mr./Ms. Zhang.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer leaving a message at the reception.)

客　人:小姐,下午我的亲戚要来看我,请你转告他我下午4点回来。

Xiǎojiě, xiàwǔ wǒ de qīnqi yào lái kàn wǒ, qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào tā wǒ xiàwǔ sì diǎn huílai.

Miss, a relative of mine will come to see me this afternoon. Please tell him that I will be back at four o'clock.

服务员:好的,没问题。

Hǎode, méi wèntí.

Ok, no problem.

客　人:谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thanks!

服务员:再见。

Zàijiàn.

See you.

会话二

(Here, a man has come to see his friend, but his friend has gone out. So, he is leaving a message for his friend at the front desk.)

客　人:小姐,我想给415房间的客人留个口信。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ xiǎng gěi sì yāo wǔ fángjiān de kèrén liú gè kǒuxìn.

Miss, I would like to leave a message for the guest in room 415.

服务员:好的。

Hǎo de.

All right.

客　人:我姓王,麻烦你告诉他,明天这个时候我再来看他。

Wǒ xìng Wáng, máfan nǐ gàosu tā, míngtiān zhè ge shíhou wǒ zài lái kàn tā.

My surname is Wang. Please tell him that I will come to see him again tomorrow.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

同屋	tóngwū	roommate
回来	huílai	to come back
回家	huí jiā	to go home
回去	huíqu	to go back
出来	chūlai	to come out
出去	chūqu	to go out
去商店	qù shāngdiàn	to go to a shop/store
在家	zài jiā	at home
在学校	zài xuéxiào	at the school
在公司	zài gōngsī	at the company
在饭店	zài fàndiàn	at the hotel

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 请你转告<u>他</u>,我<u>下午 4 点回来</u>。

   Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào <u>tā</u>, wǒ <u>xiàwǔ sì diǎn huílai</u>.

张先生 Zhāng xiānsheng 他 tā 我朋友 wǒ péngyou 王经理 Wáng jīnglǐ	出去了 chūqu le 去学校了 qù xuéxiào le 下午在公司 xiàwǔ zài gōngsī 明天去看他 míngtiān qù kàn tā

2. 我想给<u>415 房间的客人</u>留个口信。

   Wǒ xiǎng gěi <u>sì yāo wǔ fángjiān de kèrén</u> liú gè kǒuxìn.

217 宿舍的同学 èr yāo qī sùshè de tóngxué 公司的王经理 gōngsī de Wáng jīnglǐ 学校的李老师 xuéxiào de Lǐ lǎoshī 你的同屋 nǐ de tóngwū

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你让阿里的同屋告诉阿里,你下午 2 点来找他。

   Nǐ ràng Ālǐ de tóngwū gàosu Ālǐ, nǐ xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn lái zhǎo tā.

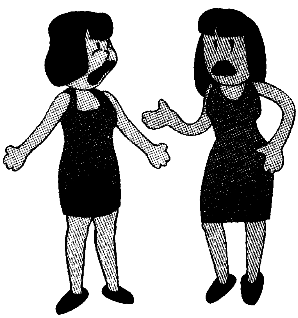
   You ask Ali's roommate to tell Ali you are going to meet him at

2:00 PM.

2. "Leave a message for her"汉语怎么说?

"Leave a message for her" hànyǔ zěnme shuō?

How do you say "leave a message for her" in Chinese?



第十三课　找　人

Dì-shísān Kè　Zhǎo Rén

Lesson 13　Look for Someone



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想找一个人,……。

   Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè rén,…….

2. 我……预约(了)。

   Wǒ ……yùyuē (le).

你知道吗? Do you know?

中国人去看朋友,要事先打电话约定一下。以前中国人之间可以随时到别人家里做客,现在越来越习惯于事先约好再见面,一般不会直接去找别人。

Chinese people usually make a phone call before visiting a friend. In the past, they used to call upon friends at any time they wanted. But now people are getting used to making an appointment in advance. Usually they do not go to knock at the door directly.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 前天	qiántiān	the day before yesterday
2. 预约	yùyuē	to make an appointment
3. 办公室	bàngōngshì	office
4. (发)传真	(fā) chuánzhēn	(send) a fax

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想找一个人,他叫 Mike,美国人,是前天来的。
Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè rén, tā jiào Mike, Měiguó rén, shì qiántiān lái de.
I want to see a man named Mike, an American. He arrived the day before yesterday.
● You will surely have many Chinese friends when you are in

China. When you need to visit them at the places where they work or live, you can start with this sentence: "Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo…… ." The following are more examples:

(1) 我想找 415 房间的 Amy,英国人,是昨天来的。

Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo sì yāo wǔ fángjiān de Amy, Yīngguó rén, shì zuótiān lái de.

I would like to see Amy in Room 415, a British woman. She arrived yesterday.

(2) 我想找你们公司的王经理。

Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo nǐmen gōngsī de Wáng jīnglǐ.

I would like to see Manager Wang of your company.

2. 我打电话预约了。

Wǒ dǎ diànhuà yùyuē le.

I made an appointment over the telephone.

- When you plan to visit someone at a company or at a formal place, you need to make an appointment first. When you speak to the receptionist, you can say to him/her that: "Wǒ …… yùyuē (le)." If not, you can say: "Wǒ méiyǒu yùyuē." Here are some examples:

(1) 我发传真预约了。

Wǒ fā chuánzhēn yùyuē le.

I made an appointment via fax.

(2) 我没有预约。

Wǒ méiyǒu yùyuē.

I didn't make an appointment.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man coming to see Mike.)

客　人:小姐,我想找一个人,他叫 Mike,美国人,是前天来的。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè rén, tā jiào Mike, Měiguórén, shì qiántiān lái de.

Miss, I am here to see Mike, an American. He arrived the day before yesterday.

服务员:他知道你要来吗?

Tā zhīdao nǐ yào lái ma?

Does he know you are coming?

客　人:知道。

Zhīdao.

Yes, he does.

服务员:请等一下。

Qǐng děng yíxià.

Wait a moment, please.

…… ……

Mike 先生请您在这儿等一下,他马上就下来。

Mike xiānsheng qǐng nín zài zhèr děng yíxià, tā mǎshàng jiù xiàlai.

Mr. Mike asks you to wait for him here; he will come down soon.

会话二

(Here, a man has come to a company to see Manager Zhang.)

客 人:小姐,我是长城公司的。我想找一下王经理。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ shì Chángchéng Gōngsī de. Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yíxià Wáng jīnglǐ.

Miss, I am from Great Wall Company. I would like to see your Manager Wang.

秘 书:您预约了吗?

Nín yùyuē le ma?

Did you make an appointment?

客 人:没有,他不知道我要来。

Méiyǒu, tā bù zhīdao wǒ yào lái.

No, he doesn't know I'm coming.

秘 书:请等一下。

Qǐng děng yíxià.

Wait a moment, please.

王经理请您去他的办公室,他在 217 号房间。

Wáng jīnglǐ qǐng nín qù tā de bàngōngshì, tā zài èr yāo qī hào fángjiān.

Manager Wang asks you to go to his office. He is in Room 217.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

美国	Měiguó	the United States of America
俄罗斯	Éluósī	Russia
英国	Yīngguó	England
法国	Fǎguó	France
德国	Déguó	Germany
日本	Rìběn	Japan
韩国	Hánguó	South Korea
前天	qiántiān	the day before yesterday
昨天	zuótiān	yesterday
今天	jīntiān	today
明天	míngtiān	tomorrow
后天	hòutiān	the day after tomorrow

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想找一个人,他叫Mike,美国人,前天来的。
   Wǒ xiǎng zhǎo yí gè rén, tā jiào Mike, Měiguórén, qiántiān lái de.

Louis Louis 山田 Shāntián	法国人 Fǎguórén 日本人 Rìběnrén	昨天 zuótiān 今天 jīntiān

Alex Alex 金昌永 Jīn Chāngyǒng	俄罗斯人 Éluósīrén 韩国人 Hánguórén	前天早上 qiántiān zǎoshang 今天下午 jīntiān xiàwǔ

2. 我打电话预约了。

   Wǒ dǎ diànhuà yùyuē le.

昨天发传真 zuótiān fā chuánzhēn 上个星期写信 shàng gè xīngqī xiě xìn 很抱歉，忘记 hěn bàoqiàn, wàngjì.

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你在一个饭店想找一个人：John Taylor。他是昨天从加拿大来的。

   Nǐ zài yí gè fàndiàn xiǎng zhǎo yí gè rén: John Taylor. Tā shì zuótiān cóng Jiānádà lái de.

   At a hotel you are looking for John Taylor who came yesterday from Canada.

2. 你告诉服务员，你要找饭店经理。

   Nǐ gàosu fúwùyuán, nǐ yào zhǎo fàndiàn jīnglǐ.

   You tell the personnel that you want to see the hotel manager.

第十四课　打长途电话

Dì-shísì Kè　Dǎ Chángtú Diànhuà

Lesson 14　Make a Long-distance Call



句型　**Sentence Pattern:**

1. 请帮我接……长途。
   Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē ……chángtú.
2. 打到……,一分钟多少钱?
   Dǎ dào ……,yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?

你知道吗? Do you know?

中国的通信业发展非常迅速,现在打电话非常方便,公共电话到处都有。如果打长途,最好买 IP 电话卡,报刊亭都可以买到这种电话卡。用 IP 电话卡可以在普通的电话上打国内、国际长途电话,能省一半以上的电话费。

China's telecommunication industry is developing very fast. It is very convenient to make telephone calls. Public telephones are everywhere. If you want to make international calls you had better get an IP card, which can be bought at newspaper booths. With an IP card you can make long distant calls and international calls at less than half of the normal price on any telephone.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 总机	zǒngjī	operator
2. 长途(电话)	chángtú(diànhuà)	long-distance (call)
3. 国内/国际长途	guónèi/guójì chángtú	domestic/international call
4. 付款	fù kuǎn	to pay money/charges
5. 接	jiē	to connect; to receive
6. 通	tōng	through



常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 请帮我接一个美国长途。
   Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē yí gè Měiguó chángtú.
   Please help me make a long-distance call to the United States.
   - Nowadays, most hotels in China provide long-distance telephone service. However, in some hotels, you still have to make a long distant call through an operator. You can also use an IC or IP card to make phone calls. When you are in a hotel and you want to ask an operator to make a long-distance call for you, you can say: "Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē……." The following are more examples:
     (1) 请帮我接一个英国长途。
         Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē yí gè Yīngguó chángtú.
         Please help me make a long-distance call to England.
     (2) 请帮我接上海国际饭店。
         Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē Shànghǎi Guójì Fàndiàn.
         Please help me make a long-distance call to Shanghai International Hotel.
2. 打到上海,一分钟多少钱?
   Dǎ dào Shànghǎi, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?
   How much does a call to Shanghai cost per minute?
   - If you need to know how much you are supposed to pay for a long-distance call, you may ask: "Dǎ dào……, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?" If you want to make a local call, you may

ask: "Dǎ shìnèi diànhuà, ……" Here are some examples:

(1) 打到东京,一分钟多少钱?

Dǎ dào Dōngjīng, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?

How much does a call to Tokyo cost per minute?

(2) 打市内电话,一分钟多少钱?

Dǎ shìnèi diànhuà, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?

How much does a local call cost per minute?



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer trying to get a hold of an operator to help him/her make a long-distance call.)

客人:你好,总机。请帮我接一个美国长途。

Nǐ hǎo, zǒngjī. Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē yí gè Měiguó chángtú.

Hello, operator. Please help me make a long-distance call to the United States of America.

总机:是自己付款还是对方付款?

Shì zìjǐ fù kuǎn háishì duìfāng fù kuǎn?

Is it a collect call or not?

客人:我自己付。

Wǒ zìjǐ fù.

I will pay the charges myself.

总机:电话号码是多少?

Diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

What is the telephone number?

客人:30303-3083。

Sān líng sān líng sān sān líng bā sān.

30303-3083.

总机:请稍等。

Qǐng shāo děng.

Just a moment, please.

…… ……

总机:您的电话接通了。

Nín de diànhuà jiētōng le.

I've put your call through.

会话二

(In China, some public phones are operated by people. Here is a girl making a call with this kind of telephone.)

女士:你好,我要打一个长途。

Nǐ hǎo, wǒ yào dǎ yí gè chángtú.

Hello, I would like to make a long-distance call.

男士:是国内的还是国际的?

Shì guónèi de háishì guójì de?

Is it domestic or international?

女士:打到上海,一分钟多少钱?

Dǎ dào Shànghǎi, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?

It is a call to Shanghai. How much does it cost per minute?

男士:9毛。先交20块钱的押金。

Jiǔ máo. Xiān jiāo èrshí kuài qián de yājīn.

9 mao. Please give a 20-yuan deposit first.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

国内长途	guónèi chángtú	long-distance domestic call (DDD)
国际长途	guójì chángtú	long-distance international call (IDD)
市内电话	shìnèi diànhuà	local call
郊区电话	jiāoqū diànhuà	out-of-city call
东京	Dōngjīng	Tokyo
纽约	Niǔyuē	New York
巴黎	Bālí	Paris
伦敦	Lúndūn	London

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 请帮我接一个美国长途。

   Qǐng bāng wǒ jiē yí gè Měiguó chángtú.

   日本长途
   Rìběn chángtú
   国内长途
   guónèi chángtú
   北京饭店
   Běijīng Fàndiàn
   中山大学
   Zhōngshān Dàxué

2. 打到上海,一分钟多少钱?

Dǎ dào Shànghǎi, yì fēnzhōng duōshao qián?

巴黎
Bālí
伦敦
Lúndūn
广州郊区
Guǎngzhōu jiāoqū
南京
Nánjīng

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你要在邮局打一个去香港的长途电话,你怎么告诉服务员?

   Nǐ yào zài yóujú dǎ yí gè qù Xiānggǎng (Hong Kong) de chángtú diànhuà, nǐ zěnme gàosu fúwùyuán?

   How do you tell the personnel in a post office that you want to make a long distance telephone call to Hong Kong?

2. 你想问邮局的人打到美国的长途电话多少钱一分钟。

   Nǐ xiǎng wèn yóujú de rén dǎ dào Měiguó de chángtú diànhuà duōshao qián yì fēnzhōng.

   You ask the personnel in a post office how much per minute it costs to make an international call to the USA.

第十五课 洗 衣

Dì-shíwǔ Kè Xǐ Yī

Lesson 15 Do Laundry



句型 Sentence Pattern:

1. 洗……需要多长时间?

   Xǐ ……xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?

2. 这里还有……,没洗干净。

   Zhèlǐ hái yǒu……,méi xǐ gānjìng.

你知道吗? Do you know?

中国的饭店里一般都提供洗衣服务,街上也有很多洗衣店,但目前还没有只提供洗衣机,让客人投币自己洗衣服的洗衣店。只有一些大学留学生宿舍有这样的服务。

China's hotels usually offer laundry services. There are also many laundries in the streets, but all of them wash your clothes for you. Only in foreign students' dorms at some universities can you do the laundry yourself, using a coin-operated washing machine.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 洗衣店/洗衣房	xǐyīdiàn /xǐyīfáng	laundry shop/laundry room
2. 毛料(衣服)	máoliào (yīfu)	woolen (clothes)
3. 内衣	nèiyī	underclothes
4. 油迹	yóujì	oil stain
5. 加急	jiājí	urgent

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 洗一件衣服需要多长时间?
   Xǐ yí jiàn yīfu xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?
   How long will it take to have an item of clothing washed?
   - Sometimes you will go to a laundry shop to have your laun-

dry done. What should you say in a laundry shop? Here is a useful expression when you want to know how long the laundry will take: "Xǐ…… xūyào duōcháng shíjiān?" The following are more examples:

(1) 洗一套西装需要多长时间?

Xǐ yí tào xīzhuāng xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?

How long will it take to have a suit cleaned?

(2) 洗一条裤子需要多长时间?

Xǐ yì tiáo kùzi xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?

How long will it take to have a pair of pants washed?

2. 这里还有油迹,没洗干净。

Zhèlǐ hái yǒu yóujì, méi xǐ gānjìng.

There is still an oil stain here, it's not completely clean.

● If there are still some stains left on your clothes after they were supposed to have been cleaned, you have to tell the person who operates the laundry that: "Zhèlǐ háiyǒu……, méi xǐ gānjìng." Here are some examples:

(1) 这里还有黑点儿,没洗干净。

Zhèlǐ hái yǒu hēidiǎnr, méi xǐ gānjìng.

There is still a black stain here, it's not completely clean.

(2) 这里还有血迹,没洗干净。

Zhèlǐ hái yǒu xuèjì, méi xǐ gānjìng.

There is still a bloodstain here, it's not completely clean.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a customer has come to a laundry shop.)

客　人:请问,洗一件衣服需要多长时间?

Qǐngwèn, xǐ yí jiàn yīfu xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?

Excuse me, how long will it take to have an item of clothing cleaned?

服务员:一天。

Yì tiān.

One day.

客　人:洗西装也是一天吗?

Xǐ xīzhuāng yě shì yì tiān ma?

Does it also take one day to have a suit cleaned?

服务员:不,洗一般的衣服需要一天,洗毛料的衣服需要两天。

Bù, xǐ yìbān de yīfu xūyào yì tiān, xǐ máoliào de yīfu xūyào liǎng tiān.

No. It takes one day to wash ordinary material clothes and two days to wash woolen clothes.

客　人:请问你们洗内衣吗?

Qǐngwèn nǐmen xǐ nèiyī ma?

Do you wash underclothes?

服务员:对不起,我们不洗内衣。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒmen bù xǐ nèiyī.

Sorry, we don't wash underclothes.

会话二

(In a hotel, a lady's laundry is done.)

服务员:小姐,您的衣服洗好了。

Xiǎojiě, nín de yīfu xǐ hǎo le.

Miss, your clothes are ready.

客 人:谢谢,我看一下。你看,这里还有油迹,没洗干净。

Xièxie, wǒ kàn yíxià. Nǐ kàn, zhèlǐ hái yǒu yóujì, méi xǐ gānjìng.

Thank you. Let me have a look. Look, there is still an oil stain here. It has not been cleaned.

服务员:对不起,我告诉洗衣房再洗一次。明天给您行吗?

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ gàosu xǐyīfáng zài xǐ yí cì. Míngtiān gěi nín xíng ma?

Sorry. I will tell the laundry to wash it again. Can we bring it to you tomorrow?

客 人:明天我要穿。能不能快一点儿?

Míngtiān wǒ yào chuān. Néng bu néng kuài yìdiǎnr?

I need to wear it tomorrow. Can I get it back earlier?

服务员:好,我们有加急服务。

Hǎo, wǒmen yǒu jiājí fúwù.

Yes. We will arrange an urgent service for you.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

西装	xīzhuāng	business suit
外套	wàitào	coat
衬衣	chènyī	shirt
裤子	kùzi	pants; trousers
裙子	qúnzi	skirt; dress
油迹	yóujì	oil stain
黑点儿	hēi diǎnr	black stain
红点儿	hóng diǎnr	red stain
墨迹	mòjì	ink stain
血迹	xuèjì	blood stain

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 洗一件衣服需要多长时间?

   Xǐ yí jiàn yīfu xūyào duō cháng shíjiān?

   一件衬衣
   yí jiàn chènyī
   一件外套
   yí jiàn wàitào
   一条裙子
   yì tiáo qúnzi
   一条裤子
   yì tiáo kùzi

2. 这里还有油迹，没洗干净。
Zhèlǐ hái yǒu yóujì, méi xǐ gānjìng.

血迹
xuèjì
墨迹
mòjì
红点儿
hóng diǎnr
黑点儿
hēi diǎnr

三、能力训练（Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.）

1. 你问洗衣店的人洗你的衣服需要几天。
Nǐ wèn xǐyīdiàn de rén xǐ nǐ de yīfu xūyào jǐ tiān.
You ask the personnel in the laundry how many days it will take them to wash your clothes。

2. 你告诉店员你的衣服还有油迹，没洗干净。
Nǐ gàosu diànyuán nǐ de yīfu hái yǒu yóujì, méi xǐ gānjìng.
You tell the personnel in the laundry that they did not wash your clothes well and there are still oil stains on the clothes.

第十六课　钱算错了

Dì-shíliù Kè　Qián Suàn Cuò Le

Lesson 16　The Bill is Wrongly Calculated



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想……，请……。

   Wǒ xiǎng ……，qǐng…… .

2. 这……是什么钱？

   Zhè ……shì shénme qián?



你知道吗? Do you know?

有些餐馆、出租车或者饭店,结账的时候他们可能会收错钱,要注意看账单,有问题的地方及时指出来。

Some restaurants, taxi drivers or even hotels charge guests more than they should. You must pay attention to the bill and point out the problem immediately.



生词　Vocabulary

1. 收银台	shōuyíntái	cashier desk
2. 账单	zhàngdān	bill
3. 算	suàn	to calculate
4. 电话费	diànhuà fèi	telephone bill
5. 哦	ò	Oh! (indicating understanding or realization)



常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想现在结账,请你开好账单。

   Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài jié zhàng, qǐng nǐ kāi hǎo zhàngdān.

   I would like to check out now. Please have my bill ready.

   - When you are about to check out from a hotel, you can use this structure to tell the receptionist that you want to check out and ask for the bill: "Wǒ xiǎng ……, qǐng nǐ (nín)

……." The following are more examples:

(1) 我想现在去机场,请你帮我叫出租车。

Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài qù jīchǎng, qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ jiào chūzūchē.

I want to go to the airport now, please call a taxi for me.

(2) 我想明天去广州,请你帮我预订机票。

Wǒ xiǎng míngtiān qù Guǎngzhōu, qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ yùdìng jīpiào.

I would like to go to Guangzhou tomorrow, please book an airline ticket for me.

2. 这 150 块是什么钱?

Zhè yìbǎi wǔshí kuài shì shénme qián?

What is this 150-yuan charge for?

- When you find an extra charge on your bill, and you do not know what it is for, you can ask: "Zhè…… shì shénme qián?" Here are some examples:

(1) 这 15%是什么钱?

Zhè bǎifēnzhī shíwǔ shì shénme qián?

What is this 15 percent charge for?

(2) 这 10 块钱是什么钱?

Zhè shí kuài qián shì shénme qián?

What is this 10 yuan charge for?



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer checking out.)

客　　人:小姐,我要结账。

Xiǎojiě,wǒ yào jié zhàng.

Miss, I want to check out.

服务员 A:先生,您请到这边收银台。

Xiānsheng,nín qǐng dào zhèbian shōuyíntái.

Sir, please go to the cashier desk here.

……

客　　人:小姐,我下午 4 点要去机场,我想现在结账,请你开好账单。

Xiǎojiě,wǒ xiàwǔ sì diǎn yào qù jīchǎng,wǒ xiǎng xiànzài jié zhàng,qǐng nǐ kāi hǎo zhàngdān.

Miss, I will go to the airport at 4:00 pm. I would like to check out now. May I have the bill, please?

服务员 B:好,我算一下,请您等一会儿。

Hǎo,wǒ suàn yíxià,qǐng nín děng yíhuìr.

Yes. Let me work out the bill for you. Please wait for a moment.

…… ……

一共是 720 块。

Yígòng shì qībǎi èrshí kuài.

The total is 720 yuan.

会话二

(Here is a customer checking his bill.)

服务员:这是您的账单,一共 1650 块。

Zhè shì nín de zhàngdān,yígòng yìqiān liùbǎi wǔshí kuài.

Here is your bill. The total is 1,650 yuan.

客　人:这么多? 这 150 块是什么钱?

Zhème duō? Zhè yìbǎi wǔshí kuài shì shénme qián?

That much? What is this 150 yuan charge for?

服务员:这是你的电话费。

Zhè shì nǐ de diànhuà fèi.

That is your telephone charge.

客　人:哦,我明白了。

Ò,wǒ míngbai le.

Oh! I see.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

房费	fángfèi	rent
水费	shuǐfèi	water fell/bill
电费	diànfèi	electricity fee/bill
学费	xuéfèi	tuition
生活费	shēnghuó fèi	cost of living
电话费	diànhuà fèi	telephone fee
服务费	fúwù fèi	service charge
机场建设费	jīchǎng jiànshè fèi	fee of building aerodrome

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想现在结账,请你开好账单。

Wǒ xiǎng xiànzài jié zhàng, qǐng nǐ kāi hǎo zhàngdān.

打个电话 dǎ gè diànhuà	帮我接总机 bāng wǒ jiē zǒngjī
去北京饭店 qù Běijīng Fàndiàn	帮我叫出租车 bāng wǒ jiào chūzūchē
明天去广州 míngtiān qù Guǎngzhōu	帮我买火车票 bāng wǒ mǎi huǒchē piào
后天去长城公司 hòutiān qù Chángchéng Gōngsī	帮我预约一下 bāng wǒ yùyuē yíxià

2. 这150块是什么钱?

Zhè yìbǎi wǔshí kuài shì shénme qián?

60块 liùshí kuài
20% bǎifēnzhī èrshí
300美元 sānbǎi Měiyuán
15%和25% bǎifēnzhī shíwǔ hé bǎifēn zhī èrshíwǔ

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 两个小时以后,你要去飞机场,现在你要结账。

Liǎng gè xiǎoshí yǐhòu, nǐ yào qù fēijīchǎng, xiànzài nǐ yào jié zhàng.

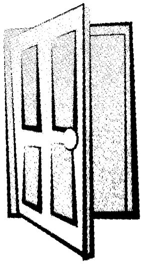
You are leaving for the airport in two hours. Now you want to

check out.

2. 账单中有 90 块,你不知道是什么钱。

Zhàngdān zhōng yǒu jiǔshí kuài, nǐ bù zhīdao shì shénme qián.

You do not know what a 90 yuan in charge on your bill is for.



第十七课　投　诉

Dì-shíqī Kè　　Tóusù

Lesson 17　Make a Complaint



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 你知道……吗?

   Nǐ zhīdao……ma?

2. 你们的……太……了。

   Nǐmen de……tài……le.



你知道吗? Do you know?

中国有专门的消费者投诉电话,号码是:12315。遇到产品的质量问题、退换货的问题,以及其他所有的跟消费有关的问题,都可以打这个电话投诉。万一你要投诉,一定要出示完整的证据,如发票等。投诉的问题可能要等一段时间,需要耐心。当然一般的小问题,如服务态度,直接找经理投诉就可以了。

China has a special telephone number 12315 for consumers' complaints. You can dial this number whenever you come across any problems with quality, returning or exchanging goods. You must present a receipt when you complain. You need patience to wait for the problem to be resolved. Of course for small problems such as service attitude, you should go directly to the manager.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 投诉	tóusù	to make a complaint
2. 态度	tàidu	attitude
3. 值班经理	zhíbān jīnglǐ	on-duty manager
4. 客房部	kèfángbù	guest room department
5. 调查	diàochá	to investigate; to survey

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你知道投诉电话的号码吗?

   Nǐ zhīdao tóusù diànhuà de hàomǎ ma?

   Do you know the phone number for making complaints?

   ● If you are not satisfied with the service of a hotel's attendant, you can write a letter of complaint or just make a complaint to the supervisor. If you choose to make a verbal complaint, you may ask for the phone number and the office location like this: "nǐ zhīdao …… ma?" The following are more examples:

   (1) 你知道值班经理的电话号码吗?

   Nǐ zhīdao zhíbān jīnglǐ de diànhuà hàomǎ ma?

   Do you know the phone number of the on-duty manager?

   (2) 你知道投诉办公室在哪儿吗?

   Nǐ zhīdao tóusù bàngōngshì zài nǎr ma?

   Do you know where the office for complaints is?

2. 你们 405 号服务员的服务态度太差了。

   Nǐmen sì líng wǔ hào fúwùyuán de fúwù tàidu tài chà le.

   The attitude of your employee No.405 is quite bad.

   ● "tài……le" is often used to express strong feeling on something. If you are really dissatisfied with a product that you have used or purchased, or you are not very pleased with the attitude of a person, you can put your complaint like this:

"Nǐmen……tài……le." Here are some examples:

(1) 你们饭馆的盘子和杯子太脏了。

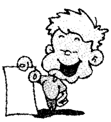
Nǐmen fànguǎn de pánzi hé bēizi tài zāng le.

The plates and the glasses in your restaurant are very dirty.

(2) 你们商场的东西质量太差了。

Nǐmen shāngchǎng de dōngxi zhìliàng tài chà le.

The quality of the merchandise in your shopping mall is very poor.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer wanting to make a complaint.)

小张:我昨天去商场买东西,售货员的态度很不好,我很不高兴。

Wǒ zuótiān qù shāngchǎng mǎi dōngxi, shòuhuòyuán de tàidu hěn bù hǎo, wǒ hěn bù gāoxìng.

Yesterday I went to a shopping mall. The attitude of a salesperson there was very bad. I was very unhappy.

小王:你可以打电话投诉,或者找值班经理投诉。

Nǐ kěyǐ dǎ diànhuà tóusù, huòzhě zhǎo zhíbān jīnglǐ tóusù.

You can make a complaint by telephone, or you can just make a complaint to the on-duty manager.

小张:你知道投诉电话的号码吗?

Nǐ zhīdao tóusù diànhuà de hàomǎ ma?

Do you know the phone number for making complaints?

小王:12315。

Yāo èr sān yāo wǔ.

12315.

会话二

(Here is a customer calling for complaint.)

客人:喂,您是客房部经理吗?

Wèi, nín shì kèfángbù jīnglǐ ma?

Hello. Are you the manager of the guest room department?

经理:是,请问,您有什么问题吗?

Shì, qǐngwèn, nín yǒu shénme wèntí ma?

Yes. Can I help you?

客人:我是 1603 号房间的客人,你们 405 号服务员的服务态度太差了。

Wǒ shì yāo liù líng sān hào fángjiān de kèrén, nǐmén sì líng wǔ hào fúwùyuán de fúwù tàidu tài chà le.

I am a guest staying in Room 1603. The attitude of your staff No. 405 is very bad.

经理:对不起,我马上去调查一下。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ mǎshàng qù diàochá yíxià.

I am so sorry. I will check this out immediately.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

投诉电话	tóusù diànhuà	complaint call
投诉办公室	tóusù bàngōngshì	complaint office
投诉热线	tóusù rèxiàn	complaint hotline
监督电话	jiāndū diànhuà	supervision call
漂亮	piàoliang	beautiful; pretty
贵	guì	expensive
脏	zāng	dirty
干净	gānjìng	clean
差	chà	bad
质量	zhìliàng	quality

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你知道投诉电话的号码吗?

   Nǐ zhīdao tóusù diànhuà de hàomǎ ma?

   投诉热线的电话号码
   tóusù rèxiàn de diànhuà hàomǎ
   Lida 的房间号码
   Lida de fángjiān hàomǎ
   他的护照号码
   tā de hùzhào hàomǎ
   长城公司的地址
   Chángchéng Gōngsī de dìzhǐ

2. 你们405号服务员的态度太差了。

Nǐmen sì líng wǔ hào fúwùyuán de tàidu tài chà le.

饭店的小姐 fàndiàn de xiǎojiě	漂亮 piàoliang
公司的经理 gōngsī de jīnglǐ	好 hǎo
商店的东西 shāngdiàn de dōngxi	贵 guì
这里的房间 zhèlǐ de fángjiān	干净 gānjìng

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你要告诉饭店经理2135号服务员的服务态度不好。

   Nǐ yào gàosu fàndiàn jīnglǐ èr yāo sān wǔ hào fúwùyuán de fúwù tàidu bù hǎo.

   You want to tell the hotel manager that the service attitude of attendant No. 2135 is not good.

2. 你想问饭店的投诉电话号码。

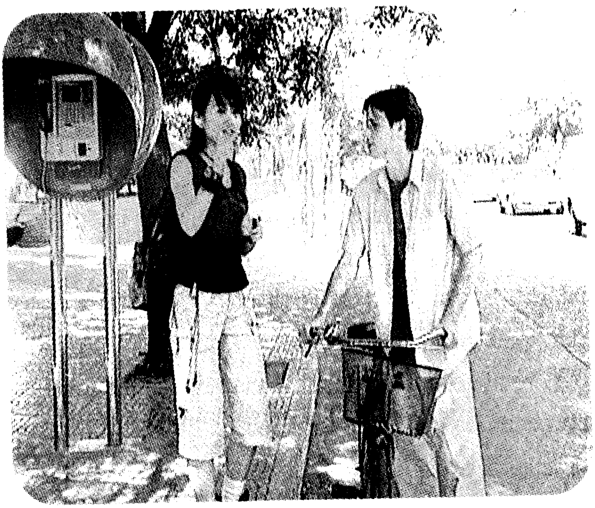
   Nǐ xiǎng wèn fàndiàn de tóusù diànhuà hàomǎ.

   You want to know the telephone number for making complaints.

第十八课　问　路

Dì-shíbā Kè　　Wèn Lù

Lesson 18　Ask for Direction



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……在……。
   ……zài……
2. 去……怎么走？
   Qù ……zěnme zǒu?

你知道吗？Do you know?

到了中国，通常你会发现，中国人都是很热情的。不过，如果你的汉语不太好，最好找青年人问路，因为很多年轻人会说一些英语，会给你解释清楚怎么走。

In China, Chinese people are usually very friendly. If you cannot speak good Chinese, you had better ask a young people to tell you the way, for many young people can speak English.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 站	zhàn	station; stop
2. 劳驾	láo jià	excuse me
3. 列车	lièchē	train
4. 站台	zhàntái	platform (in a railway station)
5. 剪票	jiǎn piào	to punch a ticket
6. 十字路口	shízì lùkǒu	(at the) intersection

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 出租汽车站在大门外左边。

   Chūzū qìchē zhàn zài dàmén wài zuǒbian.

   The taxi station is on the left side of the main gate.

   - In China, if you ask someone for directions, you should say: "…… zài nǎr?" and he/she will answer you: "…… zài

……." You might get different guidance from different locals. A Beijing resident would tell you the way by saying "*to the east*, *to the west*, *to the south or to the north*". But if you ask a direction from a Southerner, he/she may tell you by saying "*go forward*, *go backward*, *to the left or to the right*". The following are more examples:

(1) 15 路汽车站在学校前边 100 米。

Shíwǔ lù qìchē zhàn zài xuéxiào qiánbian yìbǎi mǐ.

The No.15 bus stop is about 100 meters away from the school's entrance.

(2) 我们公司在马路右边。

Wǒmen gōngsī zài mǎlù yòubian.

Our company is on the right side of the road.

2. 去颐和园怎么走?

Qù Yíhéyuán zěnme zǒu?

Can you tell me how to get to the Summer Palace?

- It can be quite an extraordinary experience to bike or stroll around cities in China because, in this way, you can get a real glimpse of the daily life of the Chinese people. If you want to know how to get to a specific place, you may ask: "Qù……zěnme zǒu?" Here are some examples:

(1) 去国际饭店怎么走?

Qù Guójì Fàndiàn zěnme zǒu?

Can you tell me the way to the International Hotel?

(2) 去中国银行怎么走?

Qù Zhōngguó Yínháng zěnme zǒu?

Can you tell me how to get to the Bank of China?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a traveler wants to know where the taxi station is.)

旅　　客:请问,出租汽车站在哪儿?

Qǐngwèn, chūzū qìchē zhàn zài nǎr?

Excuse me, where is the taxi station?

工作人员:出租汽车站在大门外左边。

Chūzū qìchē zhàn zài dàmén wài zuǒbian.

The taxi station is on the left side of the main gate.

会话二

(At the railway station)

旅　　客:劳驾,北京到上海的31次列车在哪儿上车?

Láo jià, Běijīng dào Shànghǎi de sānshíyī cì lièchē zài nǎr shàng chē?

Excuse me, where can I get on the Beijing – Shanghai train No. 31?

工作人员:第二站台。

Dì-èr zhàntái.

Platform No.2.

旅　　客:在哪儿剪票?

Zài nǎr jiǎn piào?

Where do I check in? (Get the ticket punched)

工作人员:上二楼,左拐,第七剪票口。

Shàng èr lóu, zuǒ guǎi, dì-qī jiǎnpiào kǒu.

The second floor, turn left, Gate No. 7.

会话三

(Cycling in the way)

旅客：请问，去颐和园怎么走？

Qǐngwèn, qù Yíhéyuán zěnme zǒu?

Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to the Summer Palace?

路人：往前走，在第一个十字路口向北拐，再往前骑 200 米，右拐就是。

Wǎng qián zǒu, zài dì-yī gè shízì lùkǒu xiàng běi guǎi, zài wǎng qián qí èrbǎi mǐ, yòu guǎi jiù shì.

Go straight ahead. Turn north at the first intersection. Keep going forward for another 200 meters. Then turn right. You will find it there.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

前边	qiánbian	front side
后边	hòubian	back side
左边	zuǒbian	left side
右边	yòubian	right side
旁边	pángbiān	beside
对面	duìmiàn	opposite
附近	fùjìn	neighborhood
东边	dōngbian	east side

西边	xībian	west side
南边	nánbian	south side
北边	běibian	north side
中间	zhōngjiān	center

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 出租汽车站在大门外左边。
   Chūzū qìchē zhàn zài dàmén wài zuǒbian.

公共汽车站 gōnggòng qìchē zhàn 火车站 huǒchē zhàn 长城公司 Chángchéng Gōngsī 中国银行 Zhōngguó Yínháng	学校前边 xuéxiào qiánbian 北京饭店旁边 Běijīng Fàndiàn pángbiān 马路对面 mǎlù duìmiàn 北京饭店和友谊商场中间 Běijīng Fàndiàn hé Yǒuyì Shāngchǎng zhōngjiān

2. 去颐和园怎么走?
   Qù Yíhéyuán zěnme zǒu?

故宫 Gùgōng 飞机场 fēijīchǎng 你们学校 nǐmen xuéxiào 花园路五号 Huāyuán Lù wǔ hào

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你问服务员 K14 次火车在哪儿剪票。

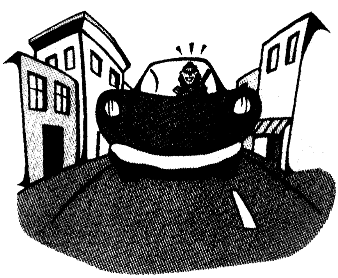
   Nǐ wèn fúwùyuán K shísì cì huǒchē zài nǎr jiǎn piào.

   You ask the personnel where to check in for train K14.

2. 问一个路人怎么去北京大学。

   Wèn yí gè lùrén zěnme qù Běijīng Dàxué.

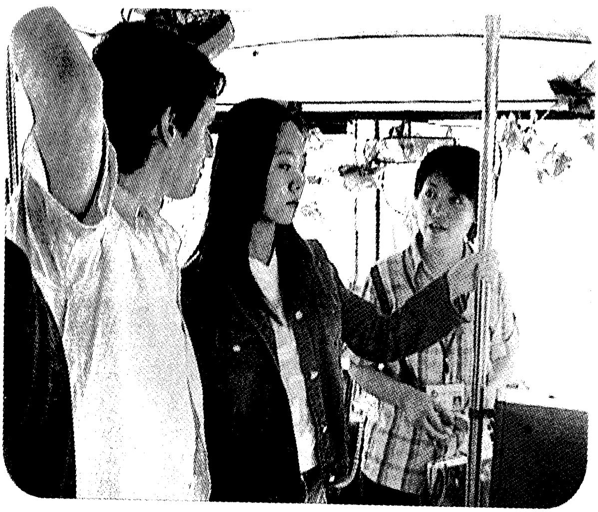
   You ask a person how to get to Beijing University.



第十九课　乘　车

Dì-shíjiǔ Kè　Chèng Chē

Lesson 19　Take a Bus



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 去……怎么坐车?

   Qù……zěnme zuò chē?

2. 买……票,到……。

   Mǎi……piào, dào…….

你知道吗？Do you know?

中国的公共汽车很便宜，一两块钱就可以坐很远，当然车上的条件也不太好，没有出租车那么干净舒服，人也比较多。另外，在公共汽车上要注意保护好自己的东西，人多容易丢东西。公共汽车票都在车上买，除了月票以外，公共汽车票用一次就作废了。

China's buses are very cheap. Just one *kuai* can take you a long distance. But the buses are not that clean and comfortable, and usually they are very crowded. In addition you must watch out for your belongings. If you do not have a monthly pass, you have to buy a ticket every time you get on a bus. The bus ticket is not reusable.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 过	guò	to pass; to cross
2. 换(车)	huàn (chē)	to transfer buses (trains)
3. 地铁	dìtiě	subway
4. 动物园	dòngwùyuán	zoo
5. 过街天桥	guò jiē tiānqiáo	pedestrian bridge

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 去前门怎么坐车？
   Qù Qiánmén zěnme zuò chē?
   Which bus should I take to Qianmen?

- We have different types of public transportation. We have buses, mini-buses, double-deckers, air-conditioned buses, subway, etc. If you are new to a city, you can ask around, or you can read the sign boards and maps at the station. Or you may ask a pedestrian:"Qù…… zěnme zuò chē?" The following are more examples:

  (1) 去火车站怎么坐车?

  Qù huǒchē zhàn zěnme zuò chē?

  Which bus should I take to the railway station?

  (2) 去飞机场怎么坐车?

  Qù fēijīchǎng zěnme zuò chē?

  Which bus should I take to the airport?

2. 买三张票,到阜成门。

Mǎi sān zhāng piào,dào Fùchéngmén.

I'd like to buy three tickets to Fuchengmen.

- Nowadays, there are buses without conductors. You just need to put coins in the bus fare ticket box. If you get on a regular bus, you need to buy a ticket from the conductor. All you need to do is to tell the conductor your destination and the number of tickets that you want to buy by saying:"Mǎi …… piào,dào ……." You also can use this sentence structure for railway tickets and airline tickets. Here are some examples:

  (1) 买两张票,到火车站。

  Mǎi liǎng zhāng piào,dào huǒchē zhàn.

  I want to buy two tickets to the railway station.

  (2) 买一张票,到广州的。

  Mǎi yì zhāng piào,dào Guǎngzhōu de.

  I want to buy a ticket to Guangzhou.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is three students going to Qianmen.)

留学生:请问,去前门怎么坐车?

Qǐngwèn, qù Qiánmén zěnme zuò chē?

Excuse me, which bus should I take to Qianmen?

路　人:过马路,在右边的那个车站坐 103、102 或者 121 路。

Guò mǎlù, zài yòubian de nèige chēzhàn zuò yāo líng sān, yāo líng èr huòzhě yāo èr yāo lù.

Just cross the road, and at the right-hand bus stop, take the No.103、No.102 or No.121 bus.

留学生:要换车吗?

Yào huàn chē ma?

Do I have to change buses?

路　人:在阜成门换地铁。

Zài Fùchéngmén huàn dìtiě.

You'll need to transfer to the subway at Fuchengmen.

留学生:谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

(After getting on the bus)

留学生:师傅,买三张票,到阜成门。

Shīfu, mǎi sān zhāng piào, dào Fùchéngmén.

Sir, I want three tickets to Fuchengmen.

售票员：三块。

Sān kuài.

Three yuan.

会话二

(Here is a couple going to the zoo.)

男士：小姐，我们要去动物园，在哪儿坐车？

Xiǎojiě, wǒmen yào qù dòngwùyuán, zài nǎr zuò chē?

Miss, we want to go to the zoo. Which bus should we take?

路人：从这儿坐 102，到阜成门换 103。

Cóng zhèr zuò yāo líng èr, dào Fùchéngmén huàn yāo líng sān.

Take the No. 102 bus from here, and then transfer to the No. 103 at Fuchengmen.

男士：车站在哪儿？

Chēzhàn zài nǎr?

Where is the bus stop?

路人：下过街天桥就是。

Xià guò jiē tiānqiáo jiù shì.

Just down under the overline bridge.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

故宫	Gùgōng	the Forbidden City
长城	Chángchéng	the Great Wall
商场	shāngchǎng	department store

大厦	dàshà	plaza; large building
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	cinema; movie theater
动物园	dòngwùyuán	zoo
公园	gōngyuán	park
体育馆	tǐyùguǎn	stadium

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 去前门怎么坐车?
   Qù Qiánmén zěnme zuò chē?

动物园
dòngwùyuán
大华商场
Dàhuá Shāngchǎng
长安电影院
Cháng'ān Diànyǐngyuàn
京广大厦
Jīngguǎng Dàshà

2. 买三张票,到阜成门。
   Mǎi sān zhāng piào, dào Fùchéngmén.

四	工人体育馆
sì	Gōngrén Tǐyùguǎn
三	中山公园
sān	Zhōngshān Gōngyuán
两	南京
liǎng	Nánjīng
一	纽约
yì	Niǔyuē

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你问一个路人在哪儿换乘地铁。

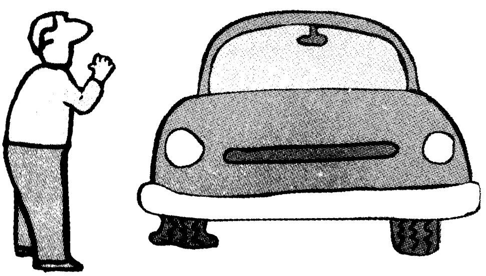
   Nǐ wèn yí gè lùrén zài nǎr huàn chèng dìtiě.

   You ask a passer-by where you could change the subway.

2. 你告诉售票员你要买一张票,到天安门。

   Nǐ gàosu shòupiàoyuán nǐ yào mǎi yì zhāng piào, dào Tiānānmén.

   You tell the conductor you want to buy a ticket to Tiananmen.



第二十课　寄特快专递和发传真

Dì-èrshí Kè　Jì Tèkuài Zhuāndì hé Fā Chuánzhēn

Lesson 20　Express Delivery and Faxing



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想……发一份传真。

   Wǒ xiǎng……fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.

2. 寄到……的特快专递几天能到?

   Jì dào……de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?



你知道吗? Do you know?

中国国内的特快专递 1 至 2 天就能寄到，当然也会比普通信函贵许多。邮寄手续，可以在邮局办理，也可以拨打电话 185，请他们上门服务。除了邮局以外，有些大城市也有速递公司，专门负责快速运输货物。传真可以在邮局或者饭店的商务中心办理，一般收、发传真都要付钱。

EMS within China takes one or two days to deliver. It is usually more expensive than common mails. You can send an EMS from the post office or you may call 185. Some EMS companies have opened business in some big cities. Faxes can be sent and received in the post office and the business center of hotels. Usually you have to pay for either receiving or sending faxes.



生词　Vocabulary

1. 发	fā	to send (faxes; e-mails)
2. 传真	chuánzhēn	fax
3. 文件	wénjiàn	file; document
4. 寄	jì	to post; to send
5. 特快专递	tèkuài zhuāndì	EMS
6. 联系	liánxì	to contact; to get in touch with

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想往上海发一份传真。

   Wǒ xiǎng wǎng Shànghǎi fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.

   I want to send a fax to Shanghai.

   - Usually, you can simply make copies of your documents or send faxes at the business centers of hotels or office buildings. If you want to send a fax to someone or some place, you should say: "Wǒ xiǎng…… fā yí fèn chuánzhēn." The following are more examples:

     (1) 我想往美国发一份传真。

     Wǒ xiǎng wǎng Měiguó fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.

     I want to send a fax to the USA.

     (2) 我想给我的父母发一份传真。

     Wǒ xiǎng gěi wǒ de fùmǔ fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.

     I want to send a fax to my parents.

2. 寄到广州的特快专递几天能到?

   Jì dào Guǎngzhōu de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?

   How long does it take to send (this) to Guangzhou by EMS?

   - The EMS companies come to your door to deliver the service, and of course, you can go to the post office to use EMS. If you want to know how long it takes to send a parcel by EMS to somewhere, you may ask: "Jì dào …… de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?" Here are some examples:

(1) 寄到美国的特快专递几天能到?
Jì dào Měiguó de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?
How long does it take to send (this) to the USA by EMS?

(2) 寄到日本的特快专递几天能到?
Jì dào Rìběn de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?
How long does it take to send (this) to Japan by EMS?



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man coming to the business center to send a fax.)

男　士:小姐,你们这里可以发传真吗?
Xiǎojiě, nǐmen zhèlǐ kěyǐ fā chuánzhēn ma?
Miss, can I send a fax here?

服务员:可以。您要发到哪里?
Kěyǐ. Nín yào fā dào nǎlǐ?
Yes. Where do you want to send it?

男　士:发一份国内传真多少钱?
Fā yí fèn guónèi chuánzhēn duōshao qián?
How much is the charge for a domestic fax?

服务员:一页纸 10 块钱。
Yí yè zhǐ shí kuài qián.
10 yuan a page.

男　士:我想往上海发一份传真。
Wǒ xiǎng wǎng Shànghǎi fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.
I want to send a fax to Shanghai.

服务员：请您把您的传真号码和文件给我。

Qǐng nín bǎ nín de chuánzhēn hàomǎ hé wénjiàn gěi wǒ.

Please give me the fax number and the documents.

……

您的传真发完了。

Nín de chuánzhēn fā wán le.

Your fax has been transmitted.

男　士：谢谢。我应该付多少钱？

Xièxie. Wǒ yīnggāi fù duōshao qián?

Thank you. How much should I pay?

服务员：一共 20 块。

Yígòng èrshí kuài.

The total is 20 yuan.

会话二

(Here is a student sending an EMS to Guangzhou.)

学生：小姐，我想寄一个特快专递到广州，几天能到？

Xiǎojiě, wǒ xiǎng jì yí gè tèkuài zhuāndì dào Guǎngzhōu, jǐ tiān néng dào?

Miss, I want to send express mail to Guangzhou. How long does it take?

职员：一般三天。请把您的姓名、地址和联系电话写一下。

Yìbān sān tiān. Qǐng bǎ nín de xìngmíng, dìzhǐ hé liánxì diànhuà xiě yíxià.

Usually, it takes three days. Please write down your name, address and contact number.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

传真	chuánzhēn	fax; facsimile
电传	diànchuán	telex
电报	diànbào	telegram; cable
电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujiàn	e-mail
父母	fùmǔ	parents
亲戚	qīnqi	relative
哥哥	gēge	elder brother
姐姐	jiějie	elder sister
弟弟	dìdi	younger brother
妹妹	mèimei	younger sister

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想往上海发一份传真。

   Wǒ xiǎng wǎng Shànghǎi fā yí fèn chuánzhēn.

   往长城公司
   wǎng Chángchéng Gōngsī
   给我的朋友
   gěi wǒ de péngyou
   给美国的父母
   gěi Měiguó de fùmǔ
   给北京大学留学生办公室
   gěi Běijīng Dàxué Liúxuéshēng Bàngōngshì

2. 寄到广州的特快专递几天能到？

Jì dào Guǎngzhōu de tèkuài zhuāndì jǐ tiān néng dào?

法国巴黎
Fǎguó Bālí
日本东京
Rìběn Dōngjīng
英国伦敦
Yīngguó Lúndūn
中国香港
Zhōngguó Xiānggǎng

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你要发一个传真给英国伦敦的朋友。

   Nǐ yào fā yí gè chuánzhēn gěi Yīngguó Lúndūn de péngyou.

   You want to send a fax to a friend in London, UK.

2. 你问一个服务员寄到上海的 EMS 几天能到上海。

   Nǐ wèn yí gè fúwùyuán jì dào Shànghǎi de EMS jǐ tiān néng dào Shànghǎi.

   You ask a service person how many days it will take for your EMS to reach Shanghai.

第二十一课　寄信和寄包裹

Dì-èrshíyī Kè　　Jì Xìn hé Jì Bāoguǒ

Lesson 21　Mail a Letter and Send a Parcel



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我寄……信。

   Wǒ jì……xìn.

2. 我要寄……到……。

   Wǒ yào jì……dào…….



你知道吗? Do you know?

从中国寄一封普通的航空信到国外,差不多要一两个星期才能寄到。如果往国外寄包裹需要验关,所以要到设有海关检查的大邮局才能寄,不是每个邮局都可以寄。

A letter mailed from China to another country will be received in about two weeks. Only big post offices can send packages abroad.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 平信	píngxìn	surface mail; ordinary mail
2. 航空信	hángkōngxìn	airmail
3. 挂号信	guàhàoxìn	registered mail
4. 称	chēng	to weigh
5. 包裹	bāoguǒ	parcel
6. (纸)盒子	(zhǐ)hézi	(cardboard) box



常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我寄航空信。

   Wǒ jì hángkōngxìn.

   I want to send it airmail.

   - Mail includes ordinary mail —píngxìn, registered mail — guàhàoxìn and airmail — hángkōngxìn. For ordinary domestic mail, you need to pay 80 *fen* for the stamp, and for a

local mail, 60 *fen*. If you want to send a very important letter, registered mail would be a good choice. At the post office, if you are asked what kind of mail service you prefer, you can say: "Wǒ jì…… xìn." The following are more examples:

(1) 我寄挂号信。

Wǒ jì guàhàoxìn.

I'll send it registered mail.

(2) 我寄平信。

Wǒ jì píngxìn.

I'll send it surface mail.

2. 我要寄一个包裹到深圳。

Wǒ yào jì yí gè bāoguǒ dào Shēnzhèn.

I would like to send a parcel to Shenzhen.

- When sending a parcel at the post office, you have to use a standard-size box made by the post office. A parcel check-up is a routine before the box is sealed. When sending something, you need to say : "Wǒ yào jì ……dào…… ." Here are some examples:

  (1) 我要寄一个包裹到美国。

  Wǒ yào jì yí gè bāoguǒ dào Měiguó.

  I would like to send this parcel to the USA.

  (2) 我要寄一些衣服到北京。

  Wǒ yào jì yìxiē yīfu dào Běijīng.

  I would like to send some clothes to Beijing.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a customer mailing a letter.)

男　士:小姐,我想寄一封信到美国。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ xiǎng jì yì fēng xìn dào Měiguó.

Miss, I want to send this letter to the USA.

营业员:你寄航空信还是挂号信?

Nǐ jì hángkōngxìn háishi guàhàoxìn?

Do you want to send it by airmail or registered mail?

男　士:我寄航空信。

Wǒ jì hángkōngxìn.

I want to send it by airmail.

营业员:请把信给我称一下。……

Qǐng bǎ xìn gěi wǒ chēng yíxià. ……

Please give me the letter to weigh. ...

请贴 5 块 4 毛钱的邮票。

Qǐng tiē wǔ kuài sì máo qián de yóupiào.

Please affix the five yuan and forty fen stamps.

会话二

(Here is a customer mailing a parcel.)

女　士:先生,我要寄一个包裹到深圳。

Xiānsheng, wǒ yào jì yí gè bāoguǒ dào Shēnzhèn.

Sir, I'd like to send this parcel to Shenzhen.

营业员：请先填一张包裹单。

Qǐng xiān tián yì zhāng bāoguǒdān.

Kindly fill out a parcel form.

女 士：您看一下，这样填行吗？

Nín kàn yíxià, zhèyàng tián xíng ma?

Please have a look. Is it OK?

营业员：行。请您把要寄的东西给我看一下。……

Xíng. Qǐng nín bǎ yào jì de dōngxi gěi wǒ kàn yíxià.

……

OK. Please show me what you are going to send. . . .

您还需要买一个盒子。邮费和盒子一共是30块6毛。

Nín hái xūyào mǎi yí gè hézi. Yóufèi hé hézi yígòng shì sānshí kuài liù máo.

You also need to buy a cardboard box. The total cost of the postage and the cardboard box cost thirty yuan and sixty fen.

女 士：请问几天能到？

Qǐngwèn jǐ tiān néng dào?

How long will it take?

营业员：一个星期吧。

Yí gè xīngqī ba.

About one week.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

一封平信	yì fēng píngxìn	a surface mail
一封挂号信	yì fēng guàhàoxìn	a registered mail
一封航空信	yì fēng hángkōngxìn	an airmail
一张明信片	yì zhāng míngxìnpiàn	a piece of postcard
一张贺年卡	yì zhāng hènián kǎ	a piece of New Year card
一个包裹	yí gè bāoguǒ	a parcel
一些东西	yìxiē dōngxi	some stuff
一些衣服	yìxiē yīfu	some clothes
几张照片	jǐ zhāng zhàopiān	some photographs

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我寄航空信。

   Wǒ jì hángkōngxìn.

   两封平信
   liǎng fēng píngxìn
   一封挂号信
   yì fēng guàhàoxìn
   几张明信片
   jǐ zhāng míngxìnpiàn
   一个包裹
   yí gè bāoguǒ

2. 我要寄一个包裹到深圳。

Wǒ yào jì yí gè bāoguǒ dào Shēnzhèn.

一些照片	法国
yìxiē zhàopiān	Fǎguó
一个特快专递	南京
yí gè tèkuài zhuāndì	Nánjīng
一封航空信	东京
yì fēng hángkōngxìn	Dōngjīng
十张贺年卡	台湾
shí zhāng hènián kǎ	Táiwān

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 普通信件叫什么?

   Pǔtōng xìnjiàn jiào shénme?

   How do you say "regular letters" in Chinese?

2. 你告诉服务员要寄一个包裹去香港。

   Nǐ gàosu fúwùyuán yào jì yí gè bāoguǒ qù Xiānggǎng.

   You tell the attendant in the post office that you want to mail a parcel to Hongkong.

第二十二课　点　菜

Dì-èrshíèr Kè　　Diǎn Cài

Lesson 22　Order Dishes



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 来一个……。

   Lái yí gè…… .

2. 你可以给我们介绍……菜吗?

   Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào ……cài ma?



你知道吗？Do you know?

中国人吃饭，习惯于把各样的菜都放在一起吃，在饭馆点菜也是如此，不是每个人点自己的菜自己吃。米饭、面条、饼等主食不是跟菜一起上，一般是客人差不多吃完了菜，喝完了酒，服务员才上主食。饭后也没有甜点，但有的饭馆会送水果。

When Chinese people are eating in a restaurant, they usually order several dishes and share them. One does not only eat the dish he or she orders. They will have the dishes and beverages first, and at last order some rice, noodles or pancakes. There is usually no dessert, but some restaurants serve fruit after the meal.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 点菜	diǎn cài	to order dishes
2. 菜单/菜谱	càidān/càipǔ	menu
3. 宫爆鸡丁	gōngbào jīdīng	Kong Pao chicken; stir-fried cubed chicken with fried peanuts
4. 烧茄子	shāo qiézi	braised eggplants
5. 糖醋排骨	táng cù páigǔ	sweet and sour pork(ribs)
6. 古老肉	gǔlǎoròu	sweet and sour pork
7. 酸辣汤	suān là tāng	sour and spicy soup
8. 特色	tè sè	speciality

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 来一个宫爆鸡丁、一个鸡蛋汤和一碗米饭。
Lái yí gè gōngbào jīdīng, yí gè jīdàn tāng hé yì wǎn mǐfàn.
We would like Kong Pao chicken, egg drop soup and a bowl of rice.
- Gōngbào jīdīng, shāo qiézi, táng cù páigǔ, gǔlǎoròu are some of the Chinese dishes which are popular among foreign visitors. Next time, try some of these at a Chinese restaurant. If you know quite a bit about Chinese cuisine, and you know what you want to eat, you can just order the food by saying: "Lái yí gè……." The following are examples:
(1) 来一个炒饭和一个酸辣汤。
Lái yí gè chǎo fàn hé yí gè suān là tāng.
I would like fried rice and sour and spicy soup.
(2) 来两碗面条和一瓶啤酒。
Lái liǎng wǎn miàntiáo hé yì píng píjiǔ.
I want two bowls of noodles and a bottle of beer.

2. 你可以给我们介绍几个好吃的菜吗?
Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào jǐ gè hǎochī de cài ma?
Could you recommend some good dishes to us?
- If you know very little about Chinese food, you can ask the waiter or the waitress for assistance. You can say this: "Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào ……cài ma?" Here are the examples:

（1）你可以给我们介绍几个特色菜吗？
Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào jǐ gè tèsè cài ma?
Could you recommend some specialties?

（2）你可以给我们介绍几个凉菜吗？
Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào jǐ gè liángcài ma?
Could you recommend some cold dishes?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here are two persons ording dishes.)

男 士：小姐，拿菜单来。
Xiǎojiě, ná càidān lai.
Miss, let me see the menu.

服务员：你们可以点菜了吗？
Nǐmen kěyǐ diǎn cài le ma?
Can you order now?

男 士：来一个宫爆鸡丁、一个烧茄子、一个鸡蛋汤，再要两碗米饭、一个炒饭。
Lái yí gè gōngbào jīdīng, yí gè shāo qiézi, yí gè jīdàn tāng, zài yào liǎng wǎn mǐfàn, yí gè chǎo fàn.
We would like Kong Pao chicken, braised eggplants and egg drop soup. And two bowls of rice and a plate of fried rice.

会话二

(Here are some foreign students ordering food.)

留学生:小姐,我们是第一次到中国来,你可以给我们介绍几个好吃的中国菜吗?

Xiǎojiě, wǒmen shì dì-yī cì dào Zhōngguó lái, nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào jǐ gè hǎochī de Zhōngguó cài ma?

Miss, this is our first time to China. Could you recommend some delicious dishes?

服务员:当然可以。我们这里的宫爆鸡丁、糖醋排骨、古老肉和烧茄子都很有名。

Dāngrán kěyǐ. Wǒmen zhèlǐ de gōngbào jīdīng, táng cù páigǔ, gǔlǎoròu hé shāo qiézi dōu hěn yǒumíng.

Certainly. The Kong Pao chicken, sweet and sour pork (ribs), sweet and sour pork and braised eggplants here are very famous.

留学生:那我们每种要一个,再来三碗米饭。

Nà wǒmen měi zhǒng yào yí gè, zài lái sān wǎn mǐfàn.

Well, then we'd like one of each of those, and three bowls of rice.

服务员:好,请稍等。

Hǎo, qǐng shāo děng.

OK. Wait a moment, please.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

米饭	mǐfàn	rice
面条	miàntiáo	noodles
馒头	mántou	steamed bun; steamed bread
包子	bāozi	steamed stuffed bun
饺子	jiǎozi	dumpling (with meat and vegetable stuffing)
炒饭	chǎo fàn	fried rice
鸡蛋汤	jīdàn tāng	egg drop soup
豆腐汤	dòufu tāng	tofu soup
鱼汤	yú tāng	fish soup
酸辣汤	suān là tāng	sour and spicy soup

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 来一个宫爆鸡丁、一个鸡蛋汤和一碗米饭。

   Lái yí gè gōngbào jīdīng, yí gè jīdàn tāng hé yì wǎn mǐfàn.

   两个包子和一碗酸辣汤
   liǎng gè bāozi hé yì wǎn suānlà tāng
   一碗面条和一个糖醋排骨
   yì wǎn miàntiáo hé yí gè tángcù páigǔ
   一个炒饭和一碗鸡蛋汤
   yí gè chǎo fàn hé yì wǎn jīdàn tāng

一斤饺子、两瓶啤酒 yì jīn jiǎozi, liǎng píng píjiǔ

2. 你可以给我们介绍几个好吃的中国菜吗？
Nǐ kěyǐ gěi wǒmen jièshào jǐ gè hǎochī de Zhōngguó cài ma?

不辣的菜 bú là de cài 这里的特色菜 zhèlǐ de tèsè cài 汤 tāng 用豆腐做的菜 yòng dòufu zuò de cài

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你知道几个中国菜的名字？说一说。
Nǐ zhīdao jǐ gè Zhōngguó cài de míngzi? Shuō yì shuō.
Say the names of the Chinese dishes you know.
2. 你问服务员要一份菜单，并试着点菜。
Nǐ wèn fúwùyuán yào yí fèn càidān, bìng shìzhe diǎn cài.
You ask for a menu and try to order some dishes.

第二十三课　几个要求

Dì-èrshísān Kè　Jǐ Gè Yāoqiú

Lesson 23　Several Special Requirements for the Dishes



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. (上次)你们的菜太……了,(这次)……。
   (Shàng cì)nǐmen de cài tài …… le, (zhè cì)…….

2. ……里别放……。
   ……lǐ bié fàng…….

你知道吗？Do you know?

在中国饭馆点菜时，你可以要求厨师稍微改变一下菜谱，增加或减少一些配料，或者改变口味，厨师都可以做到。因为中国菜不是严格按照菜谱做的，厨师完全可以做根据客人的需要加以改变。

When you order you may ask the chef to add or reduce some spices, or change the flavor of the dish. The chef can adjust the flavor of the dish according to the guest's taste.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 盐	yán	salt
2. 咸	xián	salty
3. 厨师	chúshī	cook; chef
4. 葱	cōng	scallion; green onion
5. 姜	jiāng	ginger
6. 蒜	suàn	garlic
7. 辣椒	làjiāo	hot pepper; chilli

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 上次的菜做得太咸了，这次少放些盐。

   Shàng cì de cài zuò de tài xián le, zhè cì shǎo fàng xiē yán.

   Last time your food was too salty. This time, put less salt

please.

- When having another meal with friends at a restaurant where you have previously eaten, you may not want to have again food that you didn't like the first time. To do this, you just have to speak up and tell the waiter/waitress what you want the dishes to be like by saying: "……de cài zuò de tài……le,……." The following are more examples:

  (1) 昨天的菜做得太甜了,今天少放点儿糖。

  Zuótiān de cài zuò de tài tián le, jīntiān shǎo fàng diǎnr táng.

  Your dishes yesterday were too sweet. Please use less sugar today.

  (2) 上次的菜做得太辣了,这次少放点儿辣椒。

  Shàngcì de cài zuò de tài là le, zhè cì shǎo fàng diǎnr làjiāo.

  Your dishes last time were too hot. Put less hot pepper in this time, please.

2. 汤里别放葱、姜、蒜。

Tāng lǐ bié fàng cōng, jiāng, suàn.

Don't put green onion, ginger or garlic in the soup.

- You can also ask the cook to prepare the dishes exactly to your taste. For example, many people do not like green onion, ginger, garlic, hot pepper or some other seasonings in their foods. You can ask the cook by saying: "……lǐ bié fàng……." Here are some examples:

  (1) 菜里别放味精。

  Cài lǐ bié fàng wèijīng.

  Don't put MSG in the dishes.

(2) 菜里别放辣椒。

Cài lǐ bié fàng làjiāo.

Don't put hot pepper in the dishes.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here are two people having a meal together.)

男 士:我们要一个宫爆鸡丁,一个鸡蛋汤。

Wǒmen yào yí gè gōngbào jīdīng, yí gè jīdàn tāng.

We would like to have Kong Pao chicken and egg drop soup.

女 士:小姐,上次我在这儿吃饭,菜做得太咸了,这次少放些盐。

Xiǎojiě, shàng cì wǒ zài zhèr chī fàn, cài zuò de tài xián le, zhè cì shǎo fàng xiē yán.

Miss, last time I had my meal here the dishes were very salty. Please put less salt in this time.

服务员:好,我会告诉厨师的。

Hǎo, wǒ huì gàosu chúshī de.

Yes, I will tell the cook about this.

男 士:我们要一个辣子鸡,好不好?

Wǒmen yào yí gè làzǐjī, hǎo bu hǎo?

Should we have a spicy chicken with hot pepper?

女 士:我不能吃太辣的。

Wǒ bù néng chī tài là de.

I can't eat very spicy food.

男　　士：那让厨师少放点儿辣椒。

Nà ràng chúshī shǎo fàng diǎnr làjiāo.

Well, we can ask the cook to use less hot pepper.

女　　士：汤里别放葱、姜、蒜。

Tāng lǐ bié fàng cōng, jiāng, suàn.

Oh yes, don't put green onion, ginger or garlic in the soup.

服务员：我记下来了。还有别的要求吗？

Wǒ jì xiàlai le. Hái yǒu biéde yāoqiú ma?

I have written your orders down. Anything else?

女　　士：没有了。请快点儿。

Méiyǒu le. Qǐng kuài diǎnr.

Nothing else. Please be quick.

服务员：好，请稍等。

Hǎo, qǐng shāo děng.

All right. Wait a moment, please.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

甜	tián	sweet
酸	suān	sour
苦	kǔ	bitter
辣	là	hot
咸	xián	salty
淡	dàn	tasteless; light

鲜	xiān	delicious; tasty
(油)腻	(yóu)nì	(of food) greasy; oily
葱	cōng	scallion; green onion
姜	jiāng	ginger
蒜	suàn	garlic
辣椒	làjiāo	hot pepper; chilli
胡椒面	hújiāomiàn	white pepper
咖喱	gāli	curry
糖	táng	sugar
盐	yán	salt
醋	cù	vinegar
酱油	jiàngyóu	soy sauce
味精	wèijīng	monosodium glutamate (MSG)
香油	xiāngyóu	sesame oil

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 上次你们的菜太咸了,这次少放些盐。

Shàngcì nǐmen de cài tài xián le, zhè cì shǎo fàng xiē yán.

汤 tāng	辣 là	少放些胡椒面 shǎo fàng xiē hújiāomiàn
菜 cài	淡 dàn	多放点儿盐 duō fàng diǎnr yán
糖醋排骨 táng cù páigǔ	甜 tián	少放些糖 shǎo fàng xiē táng
包子 bāozi	腻 nì	少放些肉 shǎo fàng xiē ròu

2. 汤里别放葱、姜、蒜。

Tāng lǐ bié fàng cōng, jiāng, suàn.

菜 cài	味精 wèijīng
菜 cài	醋和酱油 cù hé jiàngyóu
饺子 jiǎozi	葱和姜 cōng hé jiāng
面条 miàntiáo	辣椒 làjiāo

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你告诉服务员,你不喜欢吃辣椒。

   Nǐ gàosu fúwùyuán, nǐ bù xǐhuan chī làjiāo.

   Tell the waiter/waitress that you do not like red peppers.

2. 你要求菜里不放味精。

   Nǐ yāoqiú cài lǐ bú fàng wèijīng.

   Ask them not to put any MSG in your dishes.

第二十四课　买　东　西

Dì-èrshísì Kè　　Mǎi Dōngxi

Lesson 24　Shopping



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……多少钱?

　……duōshao qián?

2. 我可以……吗?

　Wǒ kěyǐ……ma?

3. 请把……拿给我看一下,好吗?

　Qǐng bǎ…… ná gěi wǒ kàn yíxià, hǎo ma?



你知道吗? Do you know?

买衣服或鞋袜的时候,注意尺寸和号码可能和你的国家不一样,最好亲自试一试,免得退换麻烦。同样的商品,在旅游商店、大商场和批发市场的价格可能相差很多。

The size of clothing varies in different countries. You had better try things on to avoid the trouble of returning and changing. The price of one item may vary greatly between tourist shops, department stores and the free markets.



生词　Vocabulary

1. 上衣	shàngyī	upper outer garment; jacket
2. 件	jiàn	a measure word for cloths
3. 号码	hàomǎ	size
4. 试试	shìshi	to have a try
5. 拿	ná	to take; to hold
6. 稍	shāo	a little; a bit



常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 这件衣服多少钱?

   Zhè jiàn yīfu duōshao qián?

   How much does this clothing cost?

   ● Chinese people have a simple way to ask the price of products

when shopping. If you want to know how much the clothing costs, you can say:"……duōshao qián?" The following are more examples:

(1)这件上衣多少钱?

Zhè jiàn shàngyī duōshao qián?

How much does this jacket cost?

(2)这个水果刀多少钱?

Zhè ge shuǐguǒ dāo duōshao qián?

How much does this fruit knife cost?

2. 我可以试试吗?

Wǒ kěyǐ shìshi ma?

May I try it on?

● "Wǒ kěyǐ……ma?" is often used to ask for acceptance or permission. When you are shopping for shoes or clothes and you want to try them on, you can say: "Wǒ kěyǐ shìshi ma?"Here are some examples:

(1)我可以看看这件衣服吗?

Wǒ kěyǐ kànkan zhè jiàn yīfu ma?

May I have a look at that artical of clothing?

(2)我可以抽烟吗?

Wǒ kěyǐ chōu yān ma?

May I smoke?

3. 请把那个水果刀拿给我看一下,好吗?

Qǐng bǎ nèige shuǐguǒ dāo ná gěi wǒ kàn yíxià, hǎo ma?

Would you please pass me that fruit knife over so I can have a look at it.

● When you want to have a good look at something that is placed on the shelf, you can ask the salesperson to give it to

you by saying: "qǐng……, hǎo ma?" This is a polite way to express your request. Here are more examples:

(1)请帮我一下,好吗?

Qǐng bāng wǒ yíxià, hǎo ma?

Would you do me a favor, please?

(2)请把糖拿给我,好吗?

Qǐng bǎ táng ná gěi wǒ, hǎo ma?

Can you pass me the sugar, please?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man wanting to buy a coat.)

男　士:小姐,这件上衣多少钱?

Xiǎojiě, zhè jiàn shàngyī duōshao qián?

Miss, how much does this jacket cost?

售货员:800 块一件。

Bābǎi kuài yí jiàn.

Eight hundred yuan.

男　士:有没有我的号码? 我的号码是 38B。

Yǒu méiyǒu wǒ de hàomǎ? Wǒ de hàomǎ shì sānshíbā B.

Do you have my size? I wear a 38B.

售货员:有,请稍等。

Yǒu, qǐng shāo děng.

Yes, we do. Please wait a moment.

男　士：我可以试试吗？
Wǒ kěyǐ shìshi ma?
May I try it on?
售货员：没问题。
Méi wèntí.
No problem.

会话二

(Here is a customer wanting to have a look at a fruit knife.)
售货员：您好，您要点儿什么？
Nín hǎo, nín yào diǎnr shénme?
Hello, Sir. What would you like?
男　士：请把那个水果刀拿给我看一下，行吗？
Qǐng bǎ nèige shuǐguǒ dāo ná gěi wǒ kàn yíxià, xíng ma?
Would you please pass me that fruit knife over so I can have a look at it?
售货员：请稍等。……
Qǐng shāo děng. ……
Please wait a moment. ......
男　士：我要一把。多少钱？
Wǒ yào yì bǎ. Duōshao qián?
I would like to buy one. How much is it?
售货员：五块五。
Wǔ kuài wǔ.
Five yuan and fifty fen.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读 (Learn the word groups by heart)

一件上衣	yí jiàn shàngyī	a jacket
一条裤子	yì tiáo kùzi	a pair of pants
一条裙子	yì tiáo qúnzi	a skirt
一双袜子	yì shuāng wàzi	a pair of socks
一双皮鞋	yì shuāng píxié	a pair of leather shoes
一把水果刀	yì bǎ shuǐguǒ dāo	a piece of fruit knife
一支钢笔	yì zhī gāngbǐ	a pen
一个胶卷	yí gè jiāojuǎn	a roll of film
一张地图	yì zhāng dìtú	a map
一瓶啤酒	yì píng píjiǔ	a bottle of beer
试试	shìshi	to have a try; to try something on
看看	kànkan	to take a look
听听	tīngting	to have a listen
尝尝	chángchang	to have a taste
读(一)读	dú (yì) dú	to read(for a moment)
写(一)写	xiě (yì) xiě	to take a note
用(一)用	yòng (yí) yòng	to use (for a moment)

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. ——这件上衣多少钱?

Zhè jiàn shàngyī duōshao qián?

——1800 块。

Yìqiān bābǎi kuài.

这瓶啤酒 Zhè píng píjiǔ	10 块 shí kuài
这张地图 Zhè zhāng dìtú	4 块 5 毛 sì kuài wǔ máo
这条裤子 Zhè tiáo kùzi	350 块 sānbǎi wǔshí kuài
这双袜子 Zhè shuāng wàzi	5 块 wǔ kuài

2. ——我可以试试吗?

Wǒ kěyǐ shìshi ma?

看看 kànkan
听听 tīngting
尝尝 chángchang
用用 yòngyong

——可以。

Kěyǐ.

3. ——请把那个水果刀拿给我看一下，好吗？

Qǐng bǎ nèige shuǐguǒ dāo ná gěi wǒ kàn yíxià, hǎo ma?

那本书 nèi běn shū 那支笔 nèi zhī bǐ 那双皮鞋 nèi shuāng píxié 那张地图 nèi zhāng dìtú

——请稍等。

Qǐng shāo děng.

三、能力训练（Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.）

1. 你让服务员把一件红色的上衣拿给你看看。

   Nǐ ràng fúwùyuán bǎ yí jiàn hóngsè de shàngyī ná gěi nǐ kànkan.

   You ask the salesperson to show you a red jacket.

2. 你想试试这件衣服。

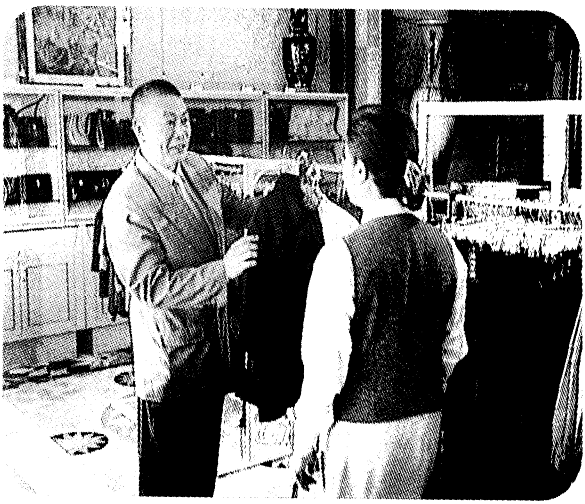
   Nǐ xiǎng shìshi zhè jiàn yīfu.

   You want to try on a piece of clothing.

第二十五课　讨价还价

Dì-èrshíwǔ Kè　Tǎo Jià Huán Jià

Lesson 25　Bargaining



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 能不能……一点儿?

   Néng bu néng……yìdiǎnr?

2. 能不能再……一点儿?

   Néng bu néng zài……yìdiǎnr?

3. 最少……?

   Zuì shǎo……?

你知道吗？Do you know?

在私人的小商店、自由市场或者旧货市场、古董市场，都可以讨价还价。有的人从店主开价的四分之一或者一半儿开始讨价还价，最后能得到满意的价格。

You may bargain in private stores, free markets, flea markets or antique markets. Some people will start from one quarter or half of the price that the seller quotes.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 讨价还价	tǎo jià huán jià	to bargain; to haggle for a better price
2. 夹克	jiākè	jacket
3. 便宜	piányi	cheap
4. 最少	zuì shǎo	least; at least; minimum
5. 贵	guì	expensive; costly; valuable

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 能不能便宜一点儿？

   Néng bu néng piányi yìdiǎnr?

   Can you make it a bit cheaper?

   - Normally, bargaining is not allowed in shops, shopping malls or shopping complexes. However, if you buy clothes,

daily necessities, vegetable or fruit, most Chinese like to bargain. When a salesperson tells you the price and you think it is expensive, you can say: "Néng bu néng piányi yìdiǎnr?" Here are some examples when making an inquiry:

(1)能不能开快一点儿?

Néng bu néng kāikuài yìdiǎnr?

Can you drive a bit faster?

(2)能不能举高一点?

Néng bu néng jǔgāo yìdiǎnr?

Can you lift it up a bit higher?

2. 能不能再便宜一点儿?

Néng bu néng zài piányi yìdiǎnr?

Can you make it (the price) lower?

● After the first round of bargaining, if you feel that the price is still to expensive and want to ask for a lower price, you can do this by saying: "Néng bu néng zài piányi yìdiǎnr?" When making the second or third inquiry on the price of an item, you can say: "Néng bu néng zài……yìdiǎnr?" Here are more examples:

(1)能不能再降低一点儿?

Néng bu néng zài jiàngdī yìdiǎnr?

Can you make it (the price) even lower?

(2)能不能再大声一点儿?

Néng bu néng zài dàshēng yìdiǎnr?

Can you make it (the sound) louder than this?

3. 最少多少钱?

Zuì shǎo duōshao qián?

What's your lowest price?

- Although you have tried to bargain several times, you still are not satisfied with the price. You may finally ask: "Zuìshǎo duōshao qián?" You can use: "Zuìshǎo……?" to ask for a definite answer on something.

  (1)最少几个人?

  Zuìshǎo jǐ gè rén?

  At least how many people?

  (2)最少几张纸?

  Zuìshǎo jǐ zhāng zhǐ?

  How many pieces of paper at the fewest?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here is a man asking the price of a jacket at a sales booth.)

男　士:请问,这件夹克多少钱?

Qǐngwèn, zhè jiàn jiākè duōshao qián?

Excuse me, how much is this jacket?

售货员:200 块。

Èrbǎi kuài.

Two hundred yuan.

男　士:太贵了! 能不能便宜一点儿?

Tài guì le! Néng bù néng piányi yìdiǎnr?

Too expensive! Can you give me a cheaper price?

售货员:180 块,怎么样?

Yìbǎi bāshí kuài, zěnmeyàng?

One hundred eighty yuan. Would that be all right?

男　士:能不能再便宜一点儿?

Néng bù néng zài piányi yìdiǎnr?

Can you make it lower than that?

售货员:最少 150 块。

Zuì shǎo yìbǎi wǔshí kuài.

The bottom price is one hundred fifty yuan.

男　士:好,我要一件。

Hǎo, wǒ yào yí jiàn.

All right. I will take one.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

这件夹克	zhè jiàn jiākè	this jacket
这条裤子	zhè tiáo kùzi	this pair of pants
这件衬衫	zhè jiàn chènshān	this shirt
这双鞋	zhè shuāng xié	this pair of shoes
这条项链	zhè tiáo xiàngliàn	this necklace
这块玉佩	zhè kuài yùpèi	this piece of jade
这把扇子	zhè bǎ shànzi	this fan
这个茶杯	zhège chábēi	this tea cup
太贵/便宜了	tài guì/piányi le	too expensive/cheap
太大/小了	tài dà/xiǎo le	too big/small
太多/少了	tài duō/shǎo le	too many (much)/less
太长/短了	tài cháng/duǎn le	too long/short
太薄/厚了	tài báo/hòu le	too thin/thick
太肥/瘦了	tài féi/shòu le	too loose/thin

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. ——这件上衣太贵了，能不能便宜一点儿?

Zhè jiàn shàngyī tài guì le, néng bu néng piányi yìdiǎnr?

长 chánɡ	短 duǎn
薄 báo	厚 hòu
小 xiǎo	大 dà
肥 féi	瘦 shòu

——没问题。

Méi wèntí.

2. ——能不能再便宜一点儿?

Néng bu néng zài piányi yìdiǎnr?

长 chánɡ
快 kuài
大 dà
咸 xián

——可以。

Kěyǐ.

3. 最少多少钱?

Zuì shǎo duōshao qián?

——最少180块。

Zuì shǎo yìbǎi bāshí kuài.

多少人 duōshao rén 几辆车 jǐ liàng chē 多少米 duōshao mǐ 几个月 jǐ gè yuè	五个人 wǔ gè rén 两辆车 liǎng liàng chē 100米 yìbǎi mǐ 半年 bànnián

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你让售货员便宜一点儿。

   Nǐ ràng shòuhuòyuán piányi yìdiǎnr.

   You ask the salesperson if he/she could lower the price.

2. 第二次让售货员便宜一点儿。

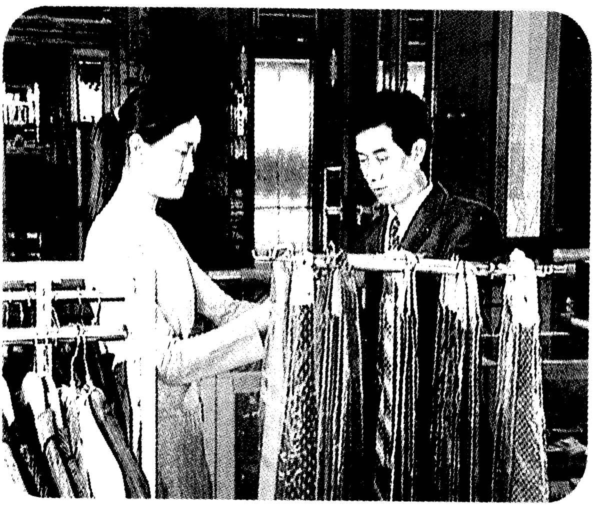
   Dì-èr cì ràng shòuhuòyuán piányi yìdiǎnr.

   You ask the salesperson for the second time if he/she could make the price lower.

第二十六课　打　折

Dì-èrshíliù Kè　　Dǎ Zhé

Lesson 26　Discount



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想买……这样的……。

   Wǒ xiǎng mǎi……zhèyàng de…….

2. 可以……吗?

   Kěyǐ…… ma?

你知道吗? Do you know?

商场会根据季节的变化或者每个月不同的节日进行打折，并没有时间的限制。还有的商场办会员卡，常年给会员打折。

Shops give discounts when seasons change or holidays come. There is no fixed time for sales. And you can also buy member cards for certain shops which give discounts to their members all year round.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 打折	dǎ zhé	to sell at a discount price
2. 优惠	yōuhuì	preferential; favourable
3. 条	tiáo	item; article; a long narrow piece
4. 这样	zhèyàng	such; like this
5. 领带	lǐngdài	necktie; tie
6. 给	gěi	to give; to let; to allow

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想买一条这样的领带。

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì tiáo zhèyàng de lǐngdài.

I would like to buy this kind of necktie.

- If you are satisfied with the pattern or design of a product and want to buy a product with similar features. You can say: "Wǒ xiǎng mǎi…… zhèyàng de……." Here are some ex-

amples:

(1) 我想买一支这样的笔。

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì zhī zhèyàng de bǐ.

I would like to buy this type of pen.

(2) 我想买一块这样的手表。

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yí kuài zhèyàng de shǒubiǎo.

I would like to get this kind of wristwatch.

2. 可以打折吗?

Kěyǐ dǎzhé ma?

Can you give me a discount?

- Though we cannot bargain in a shopping mall as we do in the flea market, we can ask the shop assistant if there is a special price or discount. In this case, you may ask a question: "Kěyǐ dǎ zhé ma?" Occasionally, we can get a good discount. The samples are:

(1) 可以打九折吗?

Kěyǐ dǎ jiǔ zhé ma?

Can I get a 10% discount?

(2) 可以给我优惠点儿吗?

Kěyǐ gěi wǒ yōuhuì diǎnr ma?

May I get a preferential price?



情景会话　Situational Conversation

(Here is a customer wanting to have a look at neckties.)

售货员:你好!

Nǐ hǎo!

Hello!

男 士:我想买一条这样的领带。

Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì tiáo zhèyàng de lǐngdài.

I would like to buy this kind of necktie.

售货员:320 块。

Sānbǎi èrshí kuài.

Three hundred twenty yuan.

男 士:可以打折吗?

Kěyǐ dǎ zhé ma?

Can I get a discount?

售货员:我可以给你打 9 折。

Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ dǎ jiǔ zhé.

I can give you a 10% discount.

男 士:8 折可以吗?

Bā zhé kěyǐ ma?

Is a 20% discount OK?

售货员:对不起,不行。

Duìbuqǐ, bù xíng.

Sorry, I can't do that.

男 士:好,我要一条。

Hǎo, wǒ yào yì tiáo.

All right, I will take one.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

一条领带	yì tiáo lǐngdài	a necktie
一块手表	yí kuài shǒubiǎo	a watch
一件睡衣	yí jiàn shuìyī	a pajamas
一支牙刷	yì zhī yáshuā	a toothbrush
一条毛巾	yì tiáo máojīn	a towel
一块香皂	yí kuài xiāngzào	a bar of soap
一面镜子	yí miàn jìngzi	a mirror
一支口红	yì zhī kǒuhóng	a lipstick
一瓶香水	yì píng xiāngshuǐ	a bottle of perfume
打折	dǎ zhé	to sell at a discount price; on sale
打几折	dǎ jǐ zhé	how much discount
打九折	dǎ jiǔ zhé	10% discount
优惠价	yōuhuì jià	preferential price
ATM 卡	ATM kǎ	ATM card
信用卡	xìnyòng kǎ	credit card

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想买一条这样的领带。

   Wǒ xiǎng mǎi yì tiáo zhèyàng de lǐngdài.

块 kuài	香皂 xiāngzào

张 zhāng 面 miàn 件 jiàn	桌子 zhuōzi 镜子 jìngzi 睡衣 shuìyī

2. 可以打折吗?

Kěyǐ dǎ zhé ma?

打八折 dǎ bā zhé 试一下 shì yíxià 换一件 huàn yí jiàn 用 ATM 卡 yòng ATM kǎ

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你问服务员能不能打折。

   Nǐ wèn fúwùyuán néng bu néng dǎ zhé.

   You ask the saleperson if he/she could give you a discount.

2. 一折、三折、八折、九折是什么意思?

   Yì zhé, sān zhé, bā zhé, jiǔ zhé shì shénme yìsi?

   What is the meaning of "yì zhé, sān zhé, bā zhé, jiǔ zhé"?

第二十七课　买　菜

Dì-èrshíqī Kè　　Mǎi Cài

Lesson 27　Buy Vegetables



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……多少钱一公斤？

　……duōshao qián yì gōngjīn?

2. ……怎么卖？

　…… zěnme mài?

3. ……多少钱？

　……duōshao qián?

你知道吗? Do you know?

中国人买菜一般去农贸市场,那里的菜新鲜便宜。现在很多大型的超市也卖菜,那里的菜干净,也不用担心分量不足。农贸市场卖菜是论“斤”的,也就是 500 克,超市是论“公斤”的,也就是 1000 克。

Chinese people normally get vegetables at the farmers' markets where the goods are fresh and cheap. Now you can also get vegetables at many big supermarkets and malls where the quantity and quality are guaranteed. Farmers' markets sell vegetables by the jin, and one jin equals 500 grams; while supermarkets and malls sell vegetables by the kilogram (1000 grams).

生词 Vocabulary

1. 斤	jīn	0.5 kilogram; a traditional unit of weight
2. 公斤	gōngjīn	kilogram; kilo
3. 菜	cài	vegetable; food
4. 蘑菇	mógu	mushroom
5. 西红柿	xīhóngshì	tomato
6. 挑	tiāo	to choose; to select, to pick out

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 蘑菇多少钱一公斤？

   Mógu duōshao qián yì gōngjīn?

   How much does one kilogram of mushrooms cost?

   ● When buying vegetables in the market, we usually want to know the price first. So, we will ask a question like this: "……duōshao qián yì gōngjīn/yì jīn?" Here are some examples:

   (1)苹果多少钱一公斤？

   Píngguǒ duōshao qián yì gōngjīn?

   How much does one kilogram of apples cost?

   (2)土豆多少钱一斤？

   Tǔdòu duōshao qián yì jīn?

   How much does potatoes cost for half a kilogram?

2. 西红柿怎么卖？

   Xīhóngshì zěnme mài?

   How much are the tomatoes?

   ● We also can ask the price like this: "……zěnme mài?"

   (1)蘑菇怎么卖？

   Mógu zěnme mài?

   How much are the mushrooms?

   (2)桔子怎么卖？

   Júzi zěnme mài?

   How much are the oranges?

3. 一共多少钱?

Yígòng duōshao qián?

How much is it altogether?

- We normally tell the seller what kind of vegetables we want and how much we need. Before making a payment, we should ask for the total price by saying: "Yígòng duōshao qián?" We can also use the following:

  (1)总共多少钱?

  Zǒnggòng duōshao qián?

  How much is it altogether?

  (2)加在一起多少钱?

  Jiā zài yìqǐ duōshao qián?

  How much is it for all of this?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here is a man who wants to buy vegetables.)

男 士:请问,蘑菇多少钱一公斤?

Qǐngwèn, mógu duōshao qián yì gōngjīn?

Excuse me. How much is half a kilogram of mushrooms?

卖菜的:两块五一斤,五块钱一公斤。你要多少?

Liǎng kuài wǔ yì jīn, wǔ kuài qián yì gōngjīn. Nǐ yào duōshao?

Two and a half yuan for half a kilogram, five yuan for one kilogram. How much do you want?

男　士：我要一斤。西红柿怎么卖？
Wǒ yào yì jīn. Xīhóngshì zěnme mài?
I will take half a kilogram. How much are the tomatoes?
卖菜的：三块。
Sān kuài.
San yuan.
男　士：三块钱一公斤吗？
Sān kuài qián yì gōngjīn ma?
Is it three yuan for a kilogram?
卖菜的：三块钱一斤。您要多少？
Sān kuài qián yì jīn. Nín yào duōshao?
It is three yuan for half a kilogram. How much do you want?
男　士：我能挑吗？
Wǒ néng tiāo ma?
May I choose them?
卖菜的：可以。
Kěyǐ.
Yes, you may.
男　士：一共多少钱？
Yígòng duōshao qián?
How much is the total?
卖菜的：九块。
Jiǔ kuài.
Nine yuan.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

蘑菇	mógu	mushroom
西红柿	xīhóngshì	tomato
土豆	tǔdòu	potato
菠菜	bōcài	spinach
黄瓜	huángguā	cucumber
芹菜	qíncài	celery
洋葱	yángcōng	onion
萝卜	luóbo	radish
卷心菜	juǎnxīncài	cabbage
苹果	píngguǒ	apple
桔子	júzi	orange
香蕉	xiāngjiāo	banana
芒果	mángguǒ	mango
梨	lí	pear
草莓	cǎoméi	strawberry
菠萝	bōluó	pineapple
西瓜	xīguā	watermelon

二、试一试（Substitution drills）

1. 我买一公斤土豆。

   Wǒ mǎi yì gōngjīn tǔdòu.

洋葱
yángcōng
萝卜
luóbo
黄瓜
huánggua
鸡蛋
jīdàn

2. 桔子怎么卖？

   Júzi zěnme mài?

芒果
mángguǒ
西瓜
xīguā
草莓
cǎoméi
这种梨
zhè zhǒng lí

3. 一共多少钱?

Yígòng duōshao qián?

总共
zǒnggòng
加在一起
jiā zài yìqǐ
两斤蘑菇和一斤西红柿
liǎng jīn mógu hé yì jīn xīhóngshì
这些鸡蛋
zhèxiē jīdàn

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 说说你知道的蔬菜的汉语名字。

   Shuōshuo nǐ zhīdao de shūcài de Hànyǔ míngzì.

   Say the Chinese names of the vegetables you know.

2. 你想知道西红柿的价钱。

   Nǐ xiǎng zhīdao xīhóngshì de jiàqián.

   You want to know the price of tomatoes.

第二十八课　退　货

Dì-èrshíbā Kè　　Tuì Huò

Lesson 28　Return Merchandise



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想退了……。

   Wǒ xiǎng tuì le. . . .

2. 你们的……在吗？我找他，可以吗？

   Nǐmen de ……zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?



你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国的大商场,只要保存好发票,并且在他们规定的时间内(一般是一个星期),退换货是不难的;但是在农贸市场、小商品批发市场、私人的小商店,退换货并不容易,所以在这些地方要想好了再买,尽量不去退换,免得麻烦。

It is not difficult to return or exchange what you buy within a certain period of time (normally one week) in Chinese department stores as long as you keep the receipts. But it is not easy in farmers' markets, small goods terminal markets and small private stores. You can avoid getting into trouble by thinking carefully before you make a purchase.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 退	tuì	to return; to give back; to withdraw from
2. 货	huò	goods; commodity
3. 太太	tàitai	madam; lady; Mrs.
4. 风衣	fēngyī	outer garment; dust coat
5. 穿	chuān	to wear; to put on; to be dressed in
6. 合适	héshì	suitable; appropriate



常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想退了这条裙子。
   Wǒ xiǎng tuì le zhèi tiáo qúnzi.
   I want to return this skirt.

- You have just purchased a product. However, you suddenly want to return it for some reason. You can say "Wǒ xiǎng tuì le……" to the salesperson. Here are some examples:

  (1)我想退了这双鞋。

  Wǒ xiǎng tuì le zhè shuāng xié.

  I want to return this pair of shoes.

  (2)我想退了这件风衣。

  Wǒ xiǎng tuì le zhèi jiàn fēngyī.

  I want to return this outer garment.

2. 你们的经理在吗? 我找他,可以吗?

Nǐmen de jīnglǐ zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?

Is your manager in? May I see him/her?

- If you feel that your decision to return the product may embarrass the salesperson, or the salesperson does not agree to take back the sold item, you can ask to see his/her supervisor or manager. If the person you want to see is not present, you can ask: "Nǐmen de……zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?" Here are more examples:

  (1)你们的老师在吗? 我找他,可以吗?

  Nǐmen de lǎoshī zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?

  Is your teacher in? May I see him?

  (2)你们的老板在吗? 我找他,可以吗?

  Nǐmen de lǎobǎn zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?

  Is your boss in? May I see him?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here is a customer who wants to return a skirt for his wife.)

男　士:你好,我想退了这条裙子。
Nǐ hǎo, wǒ xiǎng tuì le zhèi tiáo qúnzi.
Hello. I want to return this skirt.

售货员:请您把发票给我。
Qǐng nín bǎ fāpiào gěi wǒ.
Please let me have the receipt.

男　士:在这儿。
Zài zhèr.
Here it is.

售货员:我们为您换一条裙子可以吗?
Wǒmen wèi nín huàn yì tiáo qúnzi kěyǐ ma?
Would you like to exchange it for another one?

男　士:不,我想退了它。我太太穿着不合适。
Bù, wǒ xiǎng tuì le tā. Wǒ tàitai chuānzhe bù héshì.
No, I want to return it. It just does not suit my wife.

售货员:(沉默)……
(chénmò)
(Silent)...

男　士:你们的经理在吗?我找他,可以吗?
Nǐmen de jīnglǐ zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā, kěyǐ ma?
Is your manager in? May I see him?

售货员:好,请稍等。
Hǎo, qǐng shāo děng.

Yes. Wait a moment, please.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

裙子	qúnzi	skirt; dress
风衣	fēngyī	outer garment; dust coat
上衣	shàngyī	upper garment; jacket
书	shū	book
钱包	qiánbāo	purse; wallet
玩具	wánjù	toy
经理	jīnglǐ	manager
老板	lǎobǎn	boss
老师	lǎoshī	teacher
厂长	chǎngzhǎng	factory supervisor
主管	zhǔguǎn	person in charge of sth; person responsible for sth
家长	jiāzhǎng	the parent or guardian of a child
厨师	chúshī	cook; chef

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想退了<u>这条裙子</u>。

   Wǒ xiǎng tuì le <u>zhèi tiáo qúnzi</u>.

   这件风衣
   zhèi jiàn fēngyī

这件上衣
zhèi jiàn shàngyī
这本书
zhèi běn shū
这瓶香水
zhèi píng xiāngshuǐ

2. 你们的<u>经理</u>在吗？我找他(们)，可以吗？

Nǐmen de <u>jīnglǐ</u> zài ma? Wǒ zhǎo tā(men), kěyǐ ma?

老板
lǎobǎn
厂长
chǎngzhǎng
主管
zhǔguǎn
爸爸妈妈
bàba māma

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你想退一件上衣。

   Nǐ xiǎng tuì yí jiàn shàngyī.

   You want to return a jacket.

2. 服务员不同意为你退这件上衣，你想找经理谈谈。

   Fúwùyuán bù tóngyì wèi nǐ tuì zhè jiàn shàngyī, nǐ xiǎng zhǎo jīnglǐ tántan.

   The salesperson says you cannot return a jacket, so you want to have a word with the manager.

第二十九课　买　票

Dì-èrshíjiǔ kè　　Mǎi piào

Lesson 29　Buy Tickets



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我买一张……票。

   Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng……piào.

2. 我买一张……去……的……票。

   Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng……qù……de……piào.



你知道吗? Do you know?

看电影、参观博物馆、去旅游景点玩、坐车,都得卖票。电影院、博物馆有年票或通票,比较便宜。

火车票可以去火车站或者代理售票处买,在代理售票处买要付手续费,在火车站买不用付手续费,但可能要排队。火车一旦开车就不能退票了。火车票分为硬座、软座、硬卧、软卧四种,硬座、软座都是坐位票,比较便宜,但是只能坐着,如果旅行时间长,会很累。硬卧、软卧都是卧铺票,可以躺着休息,但比坐位票贵。软卧在包厢里,每个包厢四个人,比较安静。

In China, in movie theaters you can buy tickets which are cheap and with which you can go to the movies at any time as long as there is a seat for you in the movie theater.

You can get train tickets in the railway stations where you are likely to queue for a long time or from ticket agencies, where you have to pay a service fee. You cannot return tickets after the train leaves. There are four kinds of train tickets: hard seats, soft seats, hard sleepers and soft sleepers. Seat tickets are cheaper but make a long trip tiring since you can't lie down. Sleepers are much more expensive, but you can lie down and have a rest. Soft sleeper compartments consist of four beds and are often very quiet.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 电影	diànyǐng	film; movie; motion picture
2. 开演	kāiyǎn	to begin (of a play, movie)
3. 硬座	yìngzuò	hard seat
4. 硬卧	yìngwò	hard sleeper (on the train)
5. 软卧	ruǎnwò	soft sleeper (on the train)

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我买一张电影票。

   Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng diànyǐng piào.

   I want to buy a movie ticket.

   ● Buses, trains, airplanes, amusement parks, movie theaters, etc. require you to purchase a ticket. When you are going to buy one of these tickets, you may say: "Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng ……piào." The examples are:

   (1) 我买四张门票。

   Wǒ mǎi sì zhāng ménpiào.

   I want to buy four entrance tickets.

   (2)我买一张飞机票。

   Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng fēijī piào.

   I want to buy an airline ticket.

2. 我买一张12月22日去南京的硬卧火车票.

Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng shí'èr yuè èrshí'èr rì qù Nánjīng de yìngwò huǒchē piào.

I would like to buy a hard sleeper ticket leaving for Nanjing on December 22.

- When buying a ticket for a trip, you must tell the ticket salesperson the kind of ticket and the time you will make a trip by saying: "Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng …… qù …… de …… piào." Here are two more examples of buying a train ticket:

  (1) 我买一张明天晚上去上海的硬卧火车票。

  Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng míngtiān wǎnshang qù Shànghǎi de yìngwò huǒchē piào.

  I want to buy a hard sleeper ticket leaving for Shanghai tomorrow evening.

  (2) 我买一张这星期六去香港的软卧火车票。

  Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng zhè xīngqīliù qù Xiānggǎng de ruǎnwò huǒchē piào.

  I want to buy a soft sleeper ticket leaving for Hongkong this Saturday.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a woman buying a movie ticket.)

女　士:小姐,我买一张电影票。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ mǎi yì zhāng diànyǐng piào.

Miss, I want to buy a movie ticket.

营业员:15 块。

Shíwǔ kuài.

Fifteen yuan.

女　士:下一场电影几点开映?

Xià yì chǎng diànyǐng jǐ diǎn kāiyìng?

When is the next showtime?

营业员:下午 4:40。

Xiàwǔ sì diǎn sìshí.

Four forty in the afternoon.

女　士:谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

会话二

(Here is a traveler buying a train ticket.)

男　士:我买一张 12 月 22 日去南京的硬卧火车票。

Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng shí'èr yuè èrshí'èr rì qù Nánjīng de yìngwò huǒchē piào.

I want to buy a hard sleeper ticket leaving for Nanjing on the 22nd of December.

营业员:12 月 22 日的硬卧票已经卖完了,只有硬座和软卧。

Shí'èr yuè èrshí'èr rì de yìngwò piào yǐjing mài wán le, zhǐyǒu yìngzuò hé ruǎnwò.

The hard sleeper tickets for December 22nd are already sold out. There are only hard seat tickets and soft sleeper tickets left.

男　士:23 号呢?

Èrshísān hào ne?

How about the tickets for the 23rd?

营业员:23 号有硬卧票。

Èrshísān hào yǒu yìngwò piào.

For the 23rd there are hard sleeper tickets.

男 士:我买一张。

Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng.

I would like to buy one.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

火车票	huǒchē piào	train ticket
公园门票	gōngyuán ménpiào	entrance ticket to a park/garden
汽车票	qìchē piào	bus ticket
飞机票	fēijī piào	airline ticket; plane ticket
船票	chuán piào	ship ticket
电影票	diànyǐng piào	movie ticket
硬卧	yìngwò	hard sleeper/berth
软卧	ruǎnwò	soft sleeper/berth
硬座	yìngzuò	hard seat
头等舱	tóuděngcāng	first-class cabin
经济舱	jīngjìcāng	economy cabin

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我买一张电影票。

Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng diànyǐng piào.

一	飞机票
yì	fēijī piào
五	门票
wǔ	ménpiào
两	火车票
liǎng	huǒchē piào
三	船票
sān	chuán piào

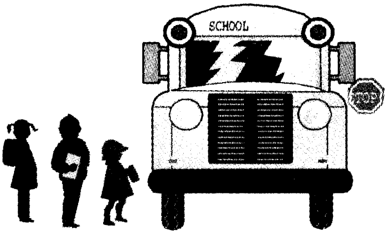
2. 我买一张12月22日去南京的硬卧火车票。

Wǒ mǎi yì zhāng shí'èr yuè èrshí'èr rì qù Nánjīng de yìngwò huǒchē piào.

明天晚上	上海	软卧票
míngtiān wǎnshang	Shànghǎi	ruǎnwò piào
这星期六	香港	船票
zhè xīngqīliù	Xiānggǎng	chuánpiào
明晚	海南	经济舱机票
míngwǎn	Hǎinán	jīngjìcāng jīpiào
下个月	东京	机票
xià gè yuè	Dōngjīng	jīpiào

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你要买一张下星期一下午去香港的飞机票,经济舱。
   Nǐ yào mǎi yì zhāng xià xīngqīyī xiàwǔ qù Xiānggǎng de fēijī piào, jīngjìcāng.
   You want to buy a airline ticket to Hongkong for the next Monday afternoon.
2. 你问朋友电影什么时间开映。
   Nǐ wèn péngyou diànyǐng shénme shíjiān kāiyìng.
   You ask your friend what time the movie will begin.



第三十课　改变预订

Dì-sānshí Kè Gǎibiàn Yùdìng

Lesson 30　Change Reservations



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我买了一张……的飞机票，我要换到……，可以吗？
   Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng……de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào……, kěyǐ ma?
2. 我要退……。
   Wǒ yào tuì…….

你知道吗? Do you know?

已经订好的飞机票可以更改时间,但需提前给航空公司打电话,一般收手续费。火车票的时间是不能改的,要改时间只能先退票再买票,但退票要在火车开车前两个小时,而且要交20%的手续费。

You can change your reservation as long as you call the airlines in advance. Service fees are charged. If you want to change a train ticket, you have to first return the one you have and then buy a new one. But you have to return the ticket two hours before the train leaves and the service fee is 20% of the ticket price.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 改变	gǎibiàn	to change; to alter; to transform
2. 窗口	chuāngkǒu	window
3. 到	dào	to arrive; to go to; until
4. 退	tuì	to return
5. 改	gǎi	to change; to revise; to correct
6. 完	wán	finished; complete; accomplished

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我买了一张25号的飞机票,我要换到26号,可以吗?
Wǒ mǎi le yìzhāng èrshíwǔ hào de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn

dào èrshíliù hào, kěyǐ ma?

I bought a plane ticket for the 25th. Can I change it to the 26th instead?

- Something suddenly comes up after you purchased a plane ticket. You cannot leave as planned and have to change your schedule. In this case, you must inform the airline's reservation office by saying: "Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng……de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào……, kěyǐ ma?" Normally, there is no charge for doing this. However, for train tickets, you have to pay a 20% processing fees. Here are some examples:

(1) 我买了一张明天的飞机票,我要换到22号,可以吗?

Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng míngtiān de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào èrshí'èr hào, kěyǐ ma?

I have bought a plane ticket for tomorrow's flight. May I change it to the 22nd?

(2)我买了一张后天的飞机票,我要换到星期一,可以吗?

Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng hòutiān de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào xīngqīyī, kěyǐ ma?

I have bought a plane ticket for the day after tomorrow's. May I change it to next Monday instead?

2. 我要退一张票。

Wǒ yào tuì yìzhāng piào.

I would like to return a ticket.

- When your traveling plan is changed, when you don't need something anymore, you should return your ticket or things, you can tell the salesperson by saying: "Wǒ yào tuì……." Here are more examples:

(1)我要退这两张票。

Wǒ yào tuì zhè liǎng zhāng piào.

I would like to return these two tickets.

(2)我要退这条裤子。

Wǒ yào tuì zhè tiáo kùzi.

I want to return this pair of pants.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man at the railway ticket office window.)

营业员:你好!

Nǐ hǎo!

Hello!

男 士:小姐,我要退一张票。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ yào tuì yì zhāng piào.

Miss, I would like to return a ticket.

营业员:请把票给我。要收 20% 的手续费,你知道吗?

Qǐng bǎ piào gěi wǒ. Yào shōu bǎifēn zhī èrshí de shǒuxùfèi, nǐ zhīdao ma?

Please give me your ticket. Do you know that there is a 20% charge for the procedure?

男 士:知道。我可以在这儿买票吗?

Zhīdao. Wǒ kěyǐ zài zhèr mǎi piào ma?

Yes, I know. Can I buy a new ticket here?

营业员:买票要去那个窗口。

Mǎi piào yào qù nèi ge chuāngkǒu.

You need to go to that window to buy the ticket.

男　士：谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

会话二

(Here, a customer inquires about a change of reservation.)

女　士：您好，我买了一张 25 号的飞机票，我要换到 26 号，可以吗？

Nín hǎo, wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng èrshíwǔ hào de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào èrshíliù hào, kěyǐ ma?

Hi. I bought a plane ticket for a flight on the 25th. Can I change it to the 26th instead?

营业员：请问您的航班号、姓名和护照号码是什么？

Qǐngwèn nín de hángbān hào, xìngmíng hé hùzhào hàomǎ shì shénme?

Please give me your flight number, your name and passport number?

女　士：CZ3211；MARY LEE, M – A – R – Y　L – E – E；护照号码：J09287561。

CZ sān èr yāo yāo; MARY LEE, M – A – R – Y　L – E – E; hùzhào hàomǎ: J líng jiǔ èr bā qī wǔ liù yāo.

My flight number is CZ3211. My name is Mary Lee. M – A – R – Y　L – E – E. and the passport number is J09287561.

营业员：好，您的飞机票已经改完了。

Hǎo, nín de fēijī piào yǐjing gǎi wán le.

Ok, your ticket is changed.

女 士:谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

退一张票	tuì yì zhāng piào	to return a ticket
退一件衣服	tuì yí jiàn yīfu	to return a piece of clothing
退一本书	tuì yì běn shū	to return a book
把票给我	bǎ piào gěi wǒ	to give me the ticket
把票给他	bǎ piào gěi tā	to give him the ticket
把球给我	bǎ qiú gěi wǒ	to give me the ball
20%的手续费	bǎifēnzhī èrshí de shǒuxùfèi	20% processing charge
30%的手续费	bǎifēnzhī sānshí de shǒuxùfèi	30% processing charge
航班号	hángbān hào	flight number
护照号	hùzhào hào	passport number
房间号	fángjiān hào	room number
电话号码	diànhuà hàomǎ	telephone number

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我买了一张25号的飞机票,我要换到26号,可以吗?

   Wǒ mǎi le yì zhāng èrshíwù hào de fēijī piào, wǒ yào huàn dào èrshíliù hào, kěyǐ ma?

明天	后天
míngtiān	hòutiān
星期一	星期三
xīngqīyī	xīngqīsān
22号	19号
èrshí'èr hào	shíjiǔ hào
10号早上	10号下午
shí hào zǎoshang	shí hào xiàwǔ

2. 我要退一张票。

   Wǒ yào tuì yì zhāng piào.

两本书
liǎng běn shū
一张电影票
yì zhāng diànyǐng piào
一个房间
yí gè fángjiān
这条裙子
zhèi tiáo qúnzi

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你要退一张票。

   Nǐ yào tuì yì zhāng piào.

   You want to return a ticket.

2. 你要把明天的火车票换到后天。

   Nǐ yào bǎ míngtiān de huǒchē piào huàn dào hòutiān.

   You want to exchange tomorrow's ticket to one leaving the day after tomorrow.



第三十一课　理　发

Dì-sānshíyī Kè　　Lǐ Fà

Lesson 31　Have a Haircut



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 就照原来的样子……。

   Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi…….

2. 请你用……,不要用……。

   Qǐng nǐ yòng……, búyào yòng…….

你知道吗? Do you know?

在理发店,用不同的洗发水洗头、用不同的烫发水烫发,甚至请不同的理发师理发,价格都不一样,一定要问清楚。另外,大多数的理发店理发的同时也提供头部、肩部和手臂的按摩服务。

Prices of shampoos and conditioners vary in Chinese barber shops and beauty salons. Prices differ even when a different barber or hair dresser serves you. In addition to washing and cutting your hair, most barbers and hair dressers will also give a massage to your head, shoulders and arms.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 理发	lǐ fà	to have a haircut
2. 剪	jiǎn	to cut (with scissors)
3. 发型	fàxíng	hair styles
4.(按)照	(àn)zhào	according to
5. 剪刀	jiǎndāo	scissors
6. 推子	tuīzi	hair-clippers
7. 刮	guā	to shave

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 就照原来的样子剪。

Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi jiǎn.

Just give me the same hair cut I already have.

- When getting your hair cut, permed, or dyed at a hairdresser's or barber's shop, the hair-dresser/barber will ask you what hairstyle you want. If you want to keep your original style, you can say: "Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi……." Also, you can use this structure to talk about other things. The following are more examples:

  (1)就照原来的样子烫。

  Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi tàng.

  Just perm it in the original style.

  (2)就照原来的样子买。

  Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi mǎi.

  I'll buy the same one as before.

2. 请你用剪刀剪,不要用推子推。

Qǐng nǐ yòng jiǎndāo jiǎn, bú yào yòng tuīzi tuī.

Please cut it with scissors, not hair clippers.

- You can ask the hairdresser to do your hair the way you like with the above sentences. If you want to tell someone to do something in a particular way, you can say: "Qǐng nǐ yòng ……, bú yào yòng……." Here are some examples:

  (1)请你用推子推,不要用剪刀剪。

  Qǐng nǐ yòng tuīzi tuī, bú yào yòng jiǎndāo jiǎn.

  Please cut it with hair-clippers, not scissors.

  (2)请你用毛巾擦,不要用布擦。

  Qǐng nǐ yòng máojīn cā, bú yào yòng bù cā.

  Please clean it with a towel, not a cloth.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a lady wanting a short haircut)

理发师:小姐,剪头啊?

Xiǎojiě, jiǎn tóu a?

Miss, do you want to have your hair short?

女 士:我想把后面的头发剪短点儿。

Wǒ xiǎng bǎ hòumian de tóufa jiǎnduǎn diǎnr.

I want to have the hair in the back cut short a little.

理发师:好,您请坐。您想剪什么样的发型?

Hǎo, nín qǐng zuò. Nín xiǎng jiǎn shénmeyàng de fàxíng?

OK. Sit down please. What style would you like?

女 士:就照原来的样子剪。

Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi jiǎn.

Just keep the same old style.

理发师:我知道了。您先洗一下头吧,用什么洗发水?

Wǒ zhīdao le. Nín xiān xǐ yíxià tóu ba, yòng shénme xǐfàshuǐ?

I see. Let's wash your hair first. What kind of shampoo would you like to use?

女 士:什么都行。用力士吧。

Shénme dōu xíng. Yòng Lìshì ba.

Any brand is fine. LUX brand is all right.

会话二

(Here is a man wanting to get a haircut.)

理发师:先生打算剪什么样的?

Xiānsheng dǎsuan jiǎn shénmeyàng de?

Sir, how would you like to have your hair cut?

男 士:剪短一些。请你用剪刀剪,不要用推子推。

Jiǎnduǎn yìxiē. Qǐng nǐ yòng jiǎndāo jiǎn, bú yào yòng tuīzi tuī.

Just cut it short. Please cut it with scissors, not hair-clippers.

理发师:您后边怎么剪?

Nín hòubian zěnme jiǎn?

What about the hair in the back?

男 士:也剪短,不过别太短了,到耳朵中间就行。

Yě jiǎnduǎn, búguò bié tài duǎn le, dào ěrduo zhōngjiān jiùxíng.

Cut it short too, but not too short, around the middle of my ears would be fine.

理发师:您还刮胡子吗?

Nín hái guā húzi ma?

Do you also need a shave?

男 士:下次吧,今天没时间了。

Xià cì ba, jīntiān méi shíjiān le.

I'll have to wait until next time. Today I do not have much time.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

剪刀	jiǎndāo	scissors
推子	tuīzi	hair-clippers; clippers
梳子	shūzi	comb
剃刀	tìdāo	razor blade
吹风机	chuīfēngjī	hair dryer
洗发水	xǐfàshuǐ	shampoo
热水/凉水	rèshuǐ/liángshuǐ	hot water/cold water
剪	jiǎn	to cut(with scissors)
推	tuī	to cut(with hair-clippers)
短	duǎn	short
刮	guā	to shave
剃	tì	to razor; to shave(with razor)
削	xiāo	to cut; to peel
烫	tàng	to perm; to have one's hair permed
染	rǎn	to dye

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 就照原来的样子<u>剪</u>。

Jiù zhào yuánlái de yàngzi <u>jiǎn</u>.

削
xiāo

刮
guā
画
huà
做
zuò

2. 请你用剪刀剪，不要用推子推。

Qǐng nǐ yòng jiǎndāo jiǎn, bú yào yòng tuīzi tuī.

梳子梳	吹风机吹
shūzi shū	chuīfēngjī chuī
铅笔写	钢笔写
qiānbǐ xiě	gāngbǐ xiě
剃刀剃	剪刀剪
tìdāo tì	jiǎndāo jiǎn
热水洗	凉水洗
rèshuǐ xǐ	liángshuǐ xǐ

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你要把前边的头发剪短一点儿。

Nǐ yào bǎ qiánbian de tóufa jiǎnduǎn yìdiǎnr.

You want to cut your bangs short.

2. 告诉美发师，你不想改变发型。

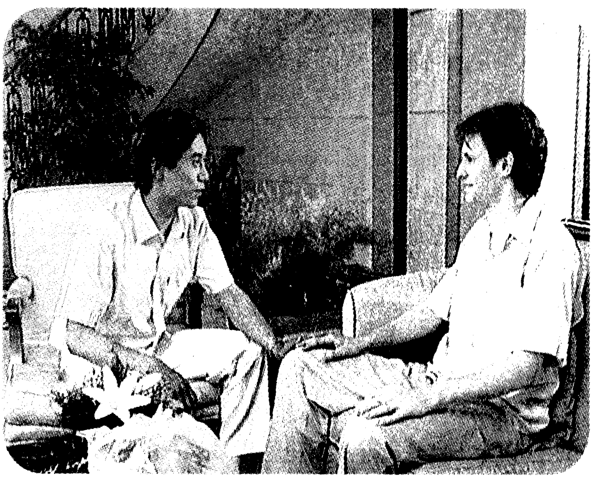
Gàosu měifàshī, nǐ bùxiǎng gǎibiàn fàxíng.

You tell the hair-dresser that you do not want to change your hair style.

第三十二课　看望病人

Dì-sānshíèr Kè　Kànwàng Bìngrén

Lesson 32　Visit a Patient



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 听说你病了，我来看看你，这是送你的……。
   Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de…… .
2. 你好好儿……，祝你……。我会再来看你。
   Nǐ hǎohāor……, zhù nǐ ……. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

你知道吗？Do you know?

看望病人，一般可以送水果作为礼物，苹果、香蕉、桔子等，颜色漂亮，病人比较喜欢。如果送花，注意一定不能送白色的花，也不能送菊花。这两种花只能送给去世的人。如果病人住院，医院有规定的探视时间，只能在探视时间里看望病人，一般是下午。

When you visit a patient in the hospital, you can bring him or her fruit as a present, such as apples, bananas, oranges, etc. The fresh colors delight the patient. You could also bring flowers, but definitely not white flowers or chrysanthemums, both of which are used only for funerals. The inpatient department of a hospital has fixed visiting time (usually afternoons), you can visit patients during these periods of time.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 看望	kànwàng	to call on; to visit; to see
2. 听说	tīngshuō	to be told; to hear of
3. 送	sòng	to deliver; to give as a present; to give
4. 水果	shuǐguǒ	fruit
5. 脸色	liǎnsè	facial expression; look; complexion
6. 康复	kāngfù	recovered; restored to health

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 听说你病了，我来看看你，这是送你的水果。

   Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de shuǐguǒ.

   I heard that you were sick, so I've come to see you. This fruit is for you.

   - When going to visit a friend who is sick, a Chinese person will usually bring along some fruit or food to give to his/her friend as a courtesy. This is a Chinese custom. Recently, giving flower to a patient has also become common. We may say something like: "Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de shuǐguǒ。" The following are more examples:

     (1) 听说你病了，我来看看你，这是送你的花儿。

     Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de huār.

     I heard that you were sick, so I have come to visit you. These flowers are for you.

     (2) 听说你病了，我来看看你，这是送你的苹果。

     Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de píngguǒ.

     I heard that you were sick, so I have come to see you. These apples are for you.

2. 你好好儿休息，祝你早日康复。我会再来看你。

   Nǐ hǎohāor xiūxi, zhù nǐ zǎorì kāngfù. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

You must be sure to rest well. I hope you recover soon. I'll come to see you again.

- Chinese often say considerate and caring things to their ailing friend before leaving. If a friend of yours is sick, you may say: "Nǐ hǎohāor xiūxi, zhù nǐ zǎorì kāngfù. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ." For other occasions, we have other phrases, such as the followings:

  (1) 你好好儿学习,祝你早日毕业。我会再来看你。

  Nǐ hǎohāor xuéxí, zhù nǐ zǎorì bìyè. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

  Study well. I hope you graduate soon. I'll come to see you again.

  (2) 你好好儿休息,祝你一切顺利。我会再来看你。

  Nǐ hǎohāor xiūxi, zhù nǐ yíqiè shùnlì. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

  Have a good rest. I hope everything you do goes smoothly. I'll come to see you again.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

(Here is a man coming to visit his ill friend in a hospital.)

同事:听说你病了,我来看看你,这是送你的水果。

Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de shuǐguǒ.

I heard that you are not well, so I have come to see you. This fruit is for you.

病人:谢谢,你太客气了。

Xièxie，nǐ tài kèqi le.

Thank you. You are so kind.

同事：现在你好一点儿了吗？你的脸色看起来很好。

Xiànzài nǐ hǎo yìdiǎnr le ma? Nǐ de liǎnsè kànqilai hěn hǎo.

Are you getting any better now? Your face looks much healthier.

病人：好多了。……

Hǎo duō le……

I feel much better now.……

同事：好了，我要走了。你好好儿休息，祝你早日康复。我会再来看你。

Hǎo le，wǒ yào zǒu le. Nǐ hǎohāor xiūxi，zhù nǐ zǎorì kāngfù. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

Well，I should be off now. Have a good rest. I hope you recover soon. I will come to see you again.

病人：谢谢，不用来了，过几天我就可以上班了。

Xièxie，bú yòng lái le，guò jǐ tiān wǒ jiù kěyǐ shàngbān le.

Thank you. You don't need to. I will return to work in a few days.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

水果	shuǐguǒ	fruit
东西	dōngxi	things；stuff
苹果	píngguǒ	apple

礼物	lǐwù	gift; present
鲜花(儿)	xiānhuā(r)	fresh flower
杂志	zázhì	magazine
书籍	shūjí	books, works, literature
蛋糕	dàngāo	cake
玩具	wánjù	toy
准备	zhǔnbèi	to prepare
取得	qǔdé	to get; to gain; to obtain
成绩	chéngjì	achievement; success
休息	xiūxi	to rest
休养	xiūyǎng	to recuperate
康复	kāngfù	to recover
出院	chūyuàn	out of the hospital
毕业	bìyè	graduate

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 听说你病了,我来看看你,这是送你的水果。
   Tīngshuō nǐ bìng le, wǒ lái kànkan nǐ, zhè shì sòng nǐ de shuǐguǒ.

东西
dōngxi
杂志
zázhì
礼物
lǐwù
鲜花(儿)
xiānhuā(r)

2. 好好儿休息，祝你早日康复。我会再来看你。

Hǎohāor xiūxi, zhù nǐ zǎorì kāngfù. Wǒ huì zài lái kàn nǐ.

学习 xuéxí	早日毕业 zǎorì bìyè
准备 zhǔnbèi	一切顺利 yíqiè shùnlì
练习 liànxí	取得好成绩 qǔdé hǎo chéngjì
休养 xiūyǎng	早日出院 zǎorì chūyuàn

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你拿着鲜花去看你的朋友，他住院了，你见到他，说什么？

Nǐ názhe xiānhuār qù kàn nǐ de péngyou, tā zhùyuàn le, nǐ jiàndào tā, shuō shénme?

You've brought some flowers to your friend. He is in the hospital. When you see him, what will you say to him?

2. 你去医院看朋友，告别时，你应该说什么？

Nǐ qù yīyuàn kàn péngyou, gàobié shí, nǐ yīnggāi shuō shénme?

You go to see your friend in the hospital. Before leaving, what should you say?

第三十三课　看　病　(一)

Dì-sānshísān Kè　Kàn Bìng (yī)

Lesson 33　See a Doctor (I)



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我要挂一个……号。

   Wǒ yào guà yí gè……hào.

2. 我的……完了。

   Wǒ de……wán le.

3. 先……,然后……。

   Xiān……, ránhòu…….



你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国,人们病了,一般都去医院看病,不去私人的诊所,这和国外很不一样。如果病情紧急,可以看急诊,急诊是 24 小时服务的;如果是一般的病,应该看门诊;有的大医院有专门的"外宾门诊",给外国人看病。看病必须先挂号,然后去所看的科室排队。在北京,上海等大城市,还有专门的国际诊所,给外国人看病。

Chinese people go to hospitals instead of private clinics. The emergency wards of hospitals work 24 hours a day. Normally people go to the outpatient department to see a doctor. Some big hospitals have "Foreigners Clinic" especially for foreigners. You must register first and then go to the appropriate department to have a check-up. In big cities such as Beijing and Shanghai there are particular international clinics for foreigners.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 护士	hùshi	nurse
2. 挂(号)	guà (hào)	to register
3. 急诊	jízhěn	emergency call
4. 发烧	fā shāo	to have a fever
5. 试(表)	shì(biǎo)	to take (someone's temperature)
6. 体温表	tǐwēnbiǎo	(clinical) thermometer
7. 然后	ránhòu	then; after that; afterwards
8. 内科	nèikē	internal medicine
9. 诊室	zhěnshì	consulting room

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我要挂一个急诊号。

   Wǒ yào guà yí gè jízhěn hào.

   I want to register for emergency treatment.

   - One needs to register before receiving treatment at a hospital in China. A medical record book is issued for each patient's keeping. The outpatient department is usually open from 8:00 AM to 5:00 PM from Monday to Friday. The emergency department is open 24 hours. You can inform the nurse which department you will register for with this sentence structure: "Wǒ yào guà yí gè……hào." The following are some examples:

     (1) 我发烧了,我要挂一个急诊号。

     Wǒ fā shāo le, wǒ yào guà yí gè jízhěn hào.

     I have a fever. I want to register for emergency treatment.

     (2) 我皮肤过敏,我要挂一个皮肤科的号。

     Wǒ pífū guòmǐn, wǒ yào guà yí gè pífūkē de hào.

     I have an allergy. I want to register for treatment by the dermatological department.

     (3) 我感冒了,我要挂一个内科号。

     Wǒ gǎnmào le, wǒ yào guà yí gè nèikē hào.

     I have the flu. I want to register for treatment by the internal medicine department.

2. 我的体温试完了。

Wǒ de tǐwēn shì wán le.

I already had my body temperature checked.

● At the hospital, you might need a complete physical examination such as blood, urine, stool test, X-ray, etc. When you are finished with any of these check-ups, you can tell the doctor like this: "Wǒ de……wán le." Here are some examples:

(1) 我的书看完了。

Wǒ de shū kàn wán le.

I have finished reading the book.

(2) 我的饭吃完了。

Wǒ de fàn chī wán le.

I have finished my meal.

3. 请先去挂号处交钱,然后去内科2诊室看大夫。

Qǐng xiān qù guàhàochù jiāo qián, ránhòu qù nèikē èr zhěnshì kàn dàifu.

Please make a payment first at the registration office, and then proceed to see the doctor in consulting room 2.

● "Xiān……, ránhòu……." is an useful structure to express the order of actions to be performed. More examples are:

(1) 先去吃饭,然后去看电影。

Xiān qù chī fàn, ránhòu qù kàn diànyǐng.

Have a meal first, and then go to see a movie.

(2) 先去图书馆借书,然后去商场买东西。

Xiān qù túshūguǎn jiè shū, ránhòu qù shāngchǎng mǎi dōngxi.

Go to the library to borrow some books first, and then

go shopping at the department store.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a patient wanting to see a doctor.)

男士:护士小姐,我要挂一个急诊号。

Hùshi xiǎojiě, wǒ yào guà yí gè jízhěn hào.

Nurse, I want to register for emergency treatment.

护士:你怎么了?

Nǐ zěnme le?

What's the matter with you?

男士:我发烧了。

Wǒ fā shāo le.

I've got a fever.

护士:什么时候开始的?

Shénme shíhou kāishǐ de?

When did it start?

男士:今天早上开始的。

Jīntiān zǎoshang kāishǐ de.

It started this morning.

护士:请先试一下体温表。10分钟以后给我。

Qǐng xiān shì yí xià tǐwēnbiǎo. Shí fēnzhōng yǐhòu gěi wǒ.

Please check your temperature first. Let me have the thermometer after ten minutes.

男士:谢谢!

Xièxie.

Thank you.

会话二

(After ten minutes)

男士:护士小姐,我的体温试完了。

Hùshi xiǎojiě, wǒ de tǐwēn shì wán le.

Nurse, it is finished reading my temperature.

护士:请把体温表给我。请先去挂号处交钱,然后去内科 2 诊室看大夫。

Qǐng bǎ tǐwēnbiǎo gěi wǒ. Qǐng xiān qù guàhàochù jiāo qián, ránhòu qù nèikē èr zhěnshì kàn dàifu.

Let me have the thermometer, please. Kindly make a payment at the registration office first, and then proceed to see the doctor in consulting room 2.

男士:谢谢!

Xièxie.

Thank you.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

急诊号	jízhěn hào	register for an emergency treatment
内科号	nèikē hào	register for treatment by the internal medicine department

外科号	wàikē hào	register for treatment by the surgical department
皮肤科号	pífūkē hào	register for a treatment by the dermatological department
妇科	fùkē	department of gynaecology
小儿科	xiǎo'érkē	paediatrics
牙科	yákē	department of dentisty
输液	shū yè	infusion; to infuse
化验	huàyàn	chemical examination
划价	huà jià	to appropriate a sum of money (of hospital pharmacy) to write down the amount to be paid on the prescription
拿/取药	ná/qǔ yào	to get/fetch the medicine
做检查	zuò jiǎnchá	to have a medical check-up
做手术	zuò shǒushù	to perform an operation

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我要挂一个<u>内科</u>号。

   Wǒ yào guà yí gè <u>nèikē</u> hào.

外科
wàikē
皮肤科
pífūkē
急诊
jízhěn
小儿科
xiǎo'érkē

2. 我的病看完了。

Wǒ de bìng kàn wán le.

化验 huàyàn	做 zuò
药 yào	吃 chī
体温 tǐwēn	试 shì
手术 shǒushù	做 zuò

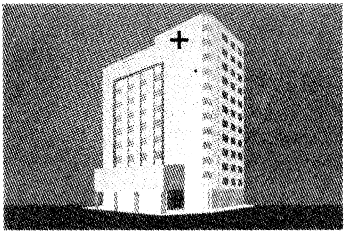
3. 先去挂号处交钱，然后去内科2诊室看病。

Xiān qù guàhàochù jiāo qián, ránhòu qù nèikē èr zhěnshì kàn bìng.

划价 huà jià	拿药 ná yào
化验 huàyàn	来找医生 lái zhǎo yīshēng
交钱 jiāo qián	做手术 zuò shǒushù
住院 zhùyuàn	做检查 zuò jiǎnchá

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 晚上,你发烧了,去医院挂什么号?
   Wǎnshang, nǐ fā shāo le, qù yīyuàn guà shénme hào?
   What department of the hospital should you go to if you have a fever at night?
2. 去中国的医院,怎么挂号、交钱、看大夫?
   Qù Zhōngguó de yīyuàn, zěnme guàhào, jiāo qián, kàn dàifu?
   How do you register, make payments and see a doctor in a Chinese hospital?



第三十四课　看　病　（二）

Dì-sānshísì Kè　Kàn Bìng (èr)

Lesson 34　See a Doctor (II)



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 从……开始，我……。

   Cóng……kāishǐ, wǒ…….

2. 注意……。

   Zhùyì …….



你知道吗? Do you know?

如果决定去医院看病,最好先准备好怎么向医生描述自己的病情,需要的话,可以带上辞典,免得医生问的问题你说不清楚,耽误了治病。

Before you go to the hospital, you'd better think about how to describe your symptoms to the doctor. Bring a dictionary if necessary, just in case you cannot make yourself understood, and consequently cannot get proper treatment.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 舒服	shūfu	comfortable; to be well
2. 呕吐	ǒutù	to vomit; to throw up; to be sick
3. 肚子	dùzi	belly; abdomen
4. 拉肚子	lā dùzi	to suffer from diarrhea; to have loose bowels
5. 痒	yǎng	itch; tickle
6. 注意	zhùyì	to pay attention to; to take notice of

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 从今天早上开始,我发烧,头疼,呕吐。
   Cóng jīntiān zǎoshang kāishǐ, wǒ fā shāo, tóu téng, ǒutù.
   Since this morning, I've had a fever, headache and vomiting.

- The doctor will ask you when the symptoms started when you are in the hospital. You can use "Cóng…… kāishǐ, wǒ ……." to describe what things happened and when happened. Here are some examples:

  (1) 从昨晚开始,我拉肚子。
  Cóng zuówǎn kāishǐ, wǒ lā dùzi.
  Since last night, I have had diarrhea.

  (2) 从今天下午开始,我休息。
  Cóng jīntiān xiàwǔ kāishǐ, wǒ xiūxi.
  I shall take a rest starting this afternoon.

2. 注意多喝水,多休息。
Zhùyì duō hē shuǐ, duō xiūxi.
Make sure to drink a lot of water and get more rest.

- When you want to remind someone to be careful about something, you can tell him/her by saying: "Zhùyì……." Here are more examples:

  (1) 注意多说汉语。
  Zhùyì duō shuō Hànyǔ.
  Try to speak more Chinese.

  (2) 注意多吃水果。
  Zhùyì duō chī shuǐguǒ.
  Be sure to eat more fruit.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

(Here is a man seeing a doctor at the internal medicine department.)
医生:你怎么不舒服?

Nǐ zěnme bù shūfu?

How do you feel?

男士:从今天早上开始,我发烧,头疼,呕吐。

Cóng jīntiān zǎoshang kāishǐ, wǒ fā shāo, tóu téng, ǒutù.

Since this morning, I've had a fever, headache and vomiting.

医生:拉肚子吗?

Lā dùzi ma?

Any diarrhea?

男士:不拉肚子。

Bù lā dùzi.

No, none.

医生:肚子疼吗?

Dùzi téng ma?

Do you have a stomachache?

男士:肚子不疼。

Dùzi bù téng.

No, I don't.

医生:你身体痒吗?

Nǐ shēntǐ yǎng ma?

Does your body itch?

男士:不痒。

Bù yǎng.

No, it doesn't.

医生:你得了感冒。回去吃药,注意多喝水,多休息。

Nǐ déle gǎnmào. Huíqu chī yào, zhùyì duō hē shuǐ, duō xiūxi.

You have a cold. Take some medicine when you get back home, and be sure to drink plenty of water and get more rest.

男士:好的。

Hǎo de.

All right.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(**Learn the word groups by heart**)

发烧	fā shāo	to have a fever
头疼	tóu téng	headache
咳嗽	késou	to cough
流鼻涕	liú bítì	to have a running nose
牙疼	yá téng	toothache
腿疼	tuǐ téng	leg ache
胃疼	wèi téng	stomachache
肚子疼	dùzi téng	stomachache; to suffer from abdominal pain
拉肚子	lā dùzi	to suffer from diarrhea; to have loose bowels
呕吐	ǒutù	to vomit
痒痒	yǎngyang	itchy
头晕	tóu yūn	dizzy; giddy
恶心	ěxīn	to feel sick
心慌	xīn huāng	to be flustered; to be nervous

按时	ànshí	on schedule
多休息	duō xiūxi	to get more rest
多喝水	duō hē shuǐ	to drink more water
多吃菜	duō chī cài	to eat more vegetables
多运动	duō yùndòng	to take more physical exercise
多吃水果	duō chī shuǐguǒ	to eat more fruit

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 从今天早上开始,我发烧,头疼,呕吐。

   Cóng jīn tiān zǎoshang kāishǐ, wǒ fā shāo, tóu téng, ǒutù.

昨天晚上	头晕
zuótiān wǎnshang	tóu yūn
星期一	头疼、流鼻涕
xīngqīyī	tóu téng, liú bítì
早上	心慌
zǎoshang	xīn huāng
中午	牙疼
zhōngwǔ	yá téng

2. 注意多休息,多喝水。

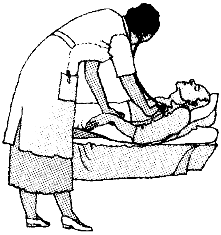
   Zhùyì duō xiūxi, duō hē shuǐ。

多睡觉
duō shuì jiào
少吃糖
shǎo chī táng

多运动
duō yùndòng
按时吃药
ànshí chī yào

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

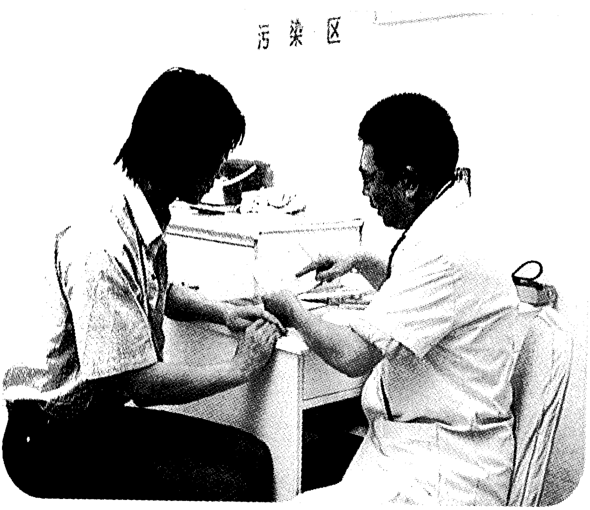
1. 用汉语说说得病以后的症状。
   Yòng Hànyǔ shuōshuo débìng yǐhòu de zhèngzhuàng.
   Say in Chinese the symptoms of some illnesses.
2. 讲述一次你得病的经历。
   Jiǎngshù yí cì nǐ débìng de jīnglì.
   Talk about one of your experiences of being sick.



第三十五课　取　药

Dì-sānshíwǔ Kè　Qǔ　Yào

Lesson 35　Get the Medicine



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 这个药一天吃……次，一次吃……片。

   Zhèige yào yì tiān chī……cì, yí cì chī……piàn.

2. ……以后再……。

   ……yǐhòu zài…….



你知道吗？Do you know?

在医院里拿到医生的处方后，可以在医院直接买药，当然也可以在外面的药房买药。如果在医院买药，必须拿医生当天的处方，过了时间就要重新开处方了。如果在药店买药，也应该拿着医生的处方，因为药店里的售货员不一定是经过医学训练的。

You can get your medicine in a hospital pharmacy with the doctor's prescription on that very day. If you want to get medicine in the hospital pharmacy on another day, you have to ask your doctor to write you a new prescription on the day you want the medicine. You can also buy medicine at any drug store, but the salepersons there are not doctors, and you will also need to bring a prescription.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 收费处	shōufèichù	cashier counter; charge collecting counter
2. 对面	duìmiàn	opposite; right in front
3. 次	cì	position in a series; occurrence; time
4. 片	piàn	tablet; piece
5. 粒	lì	used for grain-like things
6. 一起	yìqǐ	together; altogether

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 这个药一天吃两次,一次吃一片。

   Zhèige yào yì tiān chī liǎng cì, yí cì chī yí piàn。

   Take this medicine twice a day, one pill each time.

   ● Doctors or pharmacists normally tell you when and how you should take the medication. You should also read the directions on each medicine container carefully. The following are more examples:

   (1)这个药一天吃四次,一次吃两片。

   Zhèige yào yì tiān chī sì cì, yí cì chī liǎng piàn.

   Take this medicine four times a day, two pills each time.

   (2)这个药一天吃一次,一次吃五粒。

   Zhèige yào yì tiān chī yí cì, yí cì chī wǔ lì.

   Take this medicine once a day, five pills each time.

2. 吃饭以后再吃。

   Chī fàn yǐhòu zài chī。

   Take it after meal.

   ● "……yǐhòu zài……"is used to indicate that the second action is only to happen after the first action is done. It is often used in spoken Chinese. The following are more examples:

   (1)洗手以后再拿苹果。

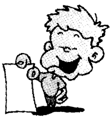
   Xǐ shǒu yǐhòu zài ná píngguǒ.

   Wash your hands before taking the apples.

(2)看医生以后再去工作。

Kàn yīshēng yǐhòu zài qù gōngzuò.

See the doctor first, and then go to work.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a patient taking a prescription to the pharmacy.)

医 生:请你先到收费处交钱,然后再取药。

Qǐng nǐ xiān dào shōufèichù jiāo qián, ránhòu zài qǔ yào.

Please go to the cashier to pay first, and then come back here to pick up your medicine.

男 士:收费处在哪儿?

Shōufèichù zài nǎr?

Where is the cashier?

医 生:在对面。

Zài duìmiàn.

It is on the opposite side.

会话二

(The patient comes back from the cashier.)

医 生:这个药一天吃两次,一次吃一片;这个药一天吃三次,一次吃两片。注意,吃饭以后再吃。

Zhèige yào yì tiān chī liǎng cì, yí cì chī yí piàn; zhèige yào yì tiān chī sān cì, yí cì chī liǎng piàn. Zhùyì chī fàn yǐhòu zài chī.

Take this medicine twice a day, one pill each time. Take that one three times a day, two pills each time. Remember, you must take them after a meal.

男　士:两个药可以一起吃吗?

Liǎng gè yào kěyǐ yìqǐ chī ma?

Can I take both medicines together?

医　生:可以一起吃。

Kěyǐ yìqǐ chī.

Yes, you can.

男　士:谢谢。我记住了。

Xièxie. Wǒ jìzhù le。

Thank you. I remember it.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

收费处	shōufèichù	cashier counter; charge collecting counter
挂号处	guàhàochù	registration counter
取药处	qǔyàochù	medicine counter
住院处	zhùyuànchù	hospital admission office
取药	qǔ yào	to get medicine
取钱	qǔ qián	to withdraw money
取信	qǔ xìn	to take one's letter
取东西	qǔ dōngxi	to take one's things
量体温	liáng tǐwēn	to take someone's temperature
吃两次	chī liǎng cì	to take twice

吃一次	chī yí cì	to take one time
吃三片	chī sān piàn	to take three pills
吃五粒	chī wǔ lì	to take five pills
毫升	háoshēng	millilitre

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 这个药一天吃两次,一次吃一片。

   Zhèige yào yì tiān chī liǎng cì, yí cì chī yí piàn.

四 sì	两片 liǎng piàn
三 sān	10毫升 shí háoshēng
两 liǎng	三粒 sān lì
三 sān	半片 bàn piàn

2. 吃饭以后再吃。

   Chī fàn yǐhòu zài chī.

洗手 xǐ shǒu	吃药 chī yào
看病 kàn bìng	去工作 qù gōngzuò
起床 qǐ chuáng	量体温 liáng tǐwēn
化验 huàyàn	打针 dǎ zhēn

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 介绍一种药的吃法。

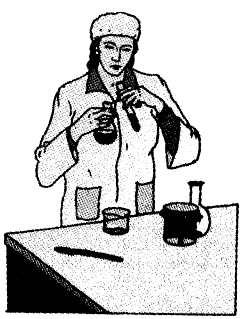
   Jièshào yì zhǒng yào de chīfǎ.

   Tell us how to take a kind of medicine.

2. 在中国的医院看病,在哪儿交费? 在哪儿取药?

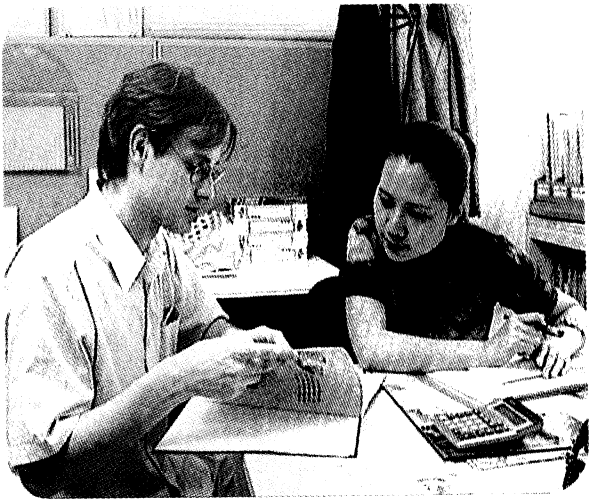
   Zài Zhōngguó de yīyuàn kàn bìng, zài nǎr jiāo fèi? Zài nǎr qǔ yào?

   Where do you pay fees and get medicine in a Chinese hospital?



第三十六课　国内旅游
Dì-sānshíliù Kè　Guónèi Lǚyóu

Lesson 36　Domestic Travel



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想……去……。
   Wǒ xiǎng……qù…….
2. ……(在)……集合。
   ……(zài)……jíhé.

你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国有非常多的地方可以去旅游。如果你决定出门旅游,最好在出发前打听好有关的信息,可以看书、看旅游杂志,上网查找,或者听朋友介绍。有的地方的火车站和长途汽车站可以帮助介绍旅馆,但是一定不能相信那些路上拦住你的人介绍的旅馆,这些小旅馆常常条件很差或者很远,不安全。

Although you can tour many places in China, there are no real established information centers that offer local tourism information. You'd better ask your friends who have been to the same place, or read books and tourism magzines or internet to get information before you set out. Some railway stations and bus terminals help give hotel information, but you cannot trust people who stop you and introduce hotels on your way out of the station. They often will bring you to remote, badly equipped hotels that are not safe.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 旅游	lǚyóu	tour; tourism; to tour
2. 旅行社	lǚxíngshè	travel service; travel agency
3. 旅行团/旅游团	lǚxíngtuán/lǚyóutuán	tour group
4. 杭州	Hángzhōu	Hangzhou
5. 合同	hétong	contract
6. 集合	jíhé	to gather; to assemble; to call together

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想 10 月 1 日到 10 月 6 日去杭州。

   Wǒ xiǎng shí yuè yī rì dào shí yuè liù rì qù Hángzhōu.

   I want to go to Hangzhou from the 1^{st} to the 6^{th} of October.

   - If you want to travel around China with a tour group, you must first have your travel document or passport ready. Contact a travel agency, review the tour program, indicate the travel time and sign a contract. Here are some examples:

     (1)我想 5 月 1 日到 5 月 10 日去香港。

     Wǒ xiǎng wǔ yuè yī rì dào wǔ yuè shí rì qù Xiānggǎng.

     I want to go to Hongkong from the 1^{st} to the 10^{th} of May.

     (2)我想 8 月 10 日到 8 月 15 日去上海。

     Wǒ xiǎng bā yuè shí rì dào bā yuè shí wǔ rì qù Shànghǎi.

     I want to go to Shanghai from the 10^{th} to the 15^{th} of August.

2. 10 月 2 日早上 8:00 火车上集合。

   Shí yuè èr rì zǎoshang bā diǎn huǒchē shang jíhé.

   On the 2^{nd} of February at 8 o'clock in the morning we will all meet together on the train.

   - After you have made all the arrangements with the travel agency, the tour operator will confirm the time and the place you will gather with the other members of the tour group.

The following are more examples:

(1)明天早上 7:00 饭店门口集合。

Míngtiān zǎoshang qī diǎn fàndiàn ménkǒu jíhé.

We shall all gather at the hotel's entrance at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.

(2)星期一晚上 6:00 火车站集合。

Xīngqīyī wǎnshang liù diǎn huǒchē zhàn jíhé.

We shall all gather at the railway station at 6 o'clock Monday evening.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a traveler is calling for information.)

男　士:是北京旅行社吗?

Shì Běijīng Lǚxíngshè ma?

Are you Beijing Travel Agency?

营业员:是。

Shì.

Yes.

男　士:我想 10 月 1 日到 10 月 6 日去杭州。这个时间,你们有旅行团吗?

Wǒ xiǎng shí yuè yī rì dào shí yuè liù rì qù Hángzhōu. Zhèige shíjiān, nǐmen yǒu lǚxíngtuán ma?

I want to go to Hangzhou from the 1^{st} to the 6^{th} of October. Do you have a tour for that period?

营业员：10 月 2 日到 10 月 5 日有一个团。他们去杭州。

Shí yuè èr rì dào shí yuè wǔ rì yǒu yí gè tuán. Tāmen qù Hángzhōu.

We have a tour group to Hangzhou between the 2nd and the 5th of October.

男　士：多少钱？

Duōshao qián?

How much does it cost?

营业员：3 天 4 夜，坐火车来回，一共 1 200 块。

Sān tiān sì yè, zuò huǒchē lái huí, yígòng yì qiān èr bǎi kuài.

Three days and four nights, travel to and from by train, the total is 1,200 yuan.

会话二

(The man comes to the travel agency's office.)

男　士：你好，我要参加 10 月 2 日去杭州的旅游团。

Nǐ hǎo, wǒ yào cānjiā shí yuè èr rì qù Hángzhōu de lǚyóutuán.

Hello, I want to join in the group going to Hangzhou on the 2nd of October.

营业员：请您把您的护照给我看一下。

Qǐng nín bǎ nín de hùzhào gěi wǒ kàn yíxià.

May I see your passport, please.

男　士：给你。

Gěi nǐ.

Here it is.

营业员：请您看一下合同。如果没有问题，请您交钱、签名。

Qǐng nín kàn yíxià hétong. Rúguǒ méiyǒu wèntí, qǐng nín jiāo qián, qiān míng.

Please read the contract. If no question about it, please make the payment and sign your name.

男　士：（看合同，签名，交钱……）好了。

(kàn hétong, qiān míng, jiāo qián ……) Hǎo le.

(Reading the contract, sign name, pay the money……) All right.

营业员：9月30日，请您来拿火车票。10月2日早上8:00火车上集合。

Jiǔ yuè sānshí rì, qǐng nín lái ná huǒchē piào. Shí yuè èr rì zǎoshang bā diǎn huǒchē shang jíhé.

On the 30th of September, please come to pick up your train ticket. You will gather with other people on the train at 8 o'clock in the morning on the 2nd of October.

男　士：知道了。

Zhīdao le.

Ok, I get it.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读（Learn the word groups by heart）

旅游	lǚyóu	tour; tourism; to tour
旅游团	lǚyóutuán	tour group
旅行	lǚxíng	to travel; to journey; to tour

旅行社	lǚxíngshè	travel agency
签名	qiān míng	to sign one's name
签字	qiān zì	to sign; signature
集合	jíhé	to get together
见(面)	jiàn(miàn)	to meet; to see
杭州	Hángzhōu	Hangzhou (city name)
西安	Xī'ān	Xi'an (city name)
西藏	Xīzàng	Tibet
台湾	Táiwān	Taiwan
九寨沟	Jiǔzhàigōu	Jiuzhaigou (name of a scenic place)
海南	Hǎinán	Hainan province
澳门	Àomén	Macau
澳大利亚	Àodàlìyà	Australia
会议室	huìyìshì	meeting room; conference room

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想10月1日到10月6日去杭州。

   Wǒ xiǎng shí yuè yī rì dào shí yuè liù rì qù Hángzhōu.

下个月1号 xià gè yuè yī hào	10号 shí hào	澳门 Àomén
2月2日 èr yuè èr rì	2月15日 èr yuè shíwǔ rì	九寨沟 Jiǔzhàigōu
下个星期一 xià gè xīngqīyī	星期四 xīngqī sì	海南 Hǎinán
七月 qī yuè	八月 bā yuè	澳大利亚 Àodàlìyà

2. 10月2日早上8:00火车上集合。

Shí yuè èr rì zǎoshang bā diǎn huǒchē shang jíhé.

明天下午3:00 饭店门口
Míngtiān xiàwǔ sān diǎn fàndiàn ménkǒu
星期二中午11:00 会议室
Xīngqī'èr zhōngwǔ shíyī diǎn huìyìshì
明天早上餐厅
Míngtiān zǎoshang cāntīng
后天上午9:30 机场
Hòutiān shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn bàn jīchǎng

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你要报名参加10月1日到10月6日的旅行团去西藏。

Nǐ yào bào míng cānjiā shí yuè yī rì dào shí yuè liù rì de lǚxíngtuán qù Xīzàng.

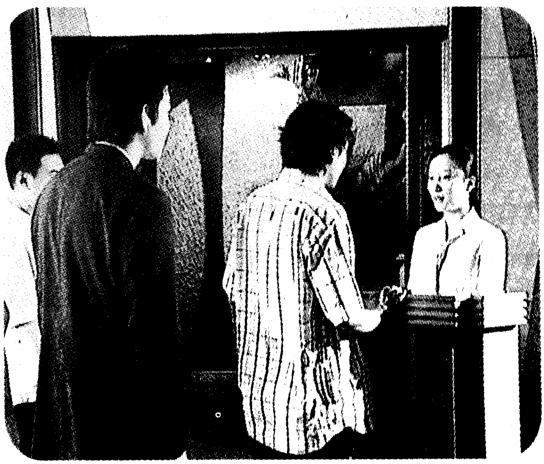
You want to register for a package tour to Tibet from October 1st to 6th.

2. 问出发的具体安排。

Wèn chūfā de jùtǐ ānpái.

You ask for detailed arrangements for setting out.

第三十七课　去唱卡拉 OK
Dì-sānshíqī Kè　Qù Chàng Kǎlā OK
Lesson 37　Go to Karaoke



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 您要……还是……?
   Nín yào……háishi……?
2. ……和……有区别吗?
   ……hé……yǒu qūbié ma?



你知道吗? Do you know?

中国有很多地方可以唱卡拉 OK,饭店的包间、歌厅等。一般是按小时收费的,白天和晚上的价格差别很大。

There are a lot of places where you can sing Karaoke in China, such as restaurants and Karaoke rooms. They charge you by the hour, and the prices differ a lot from the daytime and the night.



生词　Vocabulary

1. 唱	chàng	to sing
2. 卡拉 OK	kǎlā OK	karaoke
3. 区别	qūbié	to distinguish; difference
4. 歌曲	gēqǔ	song
5. 饮料	yǐnliào	beverage; drink



常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 您要大房间还是小房间?

   Nín yào dà fángjiān háishi xiǎo fángjiān?

   Do you want a big room or a small room?

   - Entertainment places for singing along with music and lyrics on a TV screen such as "karaoke" have several room sizes, i.e. large, medium and small, for customers to choose. A staff at the karaoke place may ask you: "Nín yào dà fángjiān

háishi xiǎo fángjiān?" You can then decide what kind of room you want. Other sentences that you might be askcd are as follows:

(1)你要茶还是咖啡?

Nǐ yào chá háishi kāfēi?

What do you want, tea or coffee?

(2)你要吃中国菜还是日本菜?

Nǐ yào chī Zhōngguó cài háishi Rìběn cài?

What do you want to eat, Chinese food or Japanese food?

2. 大房间和小房间有区别吗?

Dà fángjiān hé xiǎo fángjiān yǒu qūbié ma?

Are there specific differences between a big room and a small room?

● When you want to know the difference between two seemingly similar things, you can ask like this: "…… hé …… yǒu qūbié ma?" Here are more examples:

(1)这个和那个有区别吗?

Zhèige hé nèige yǒu qūbié ma?

Is there any difference between this and that?

(2)红茶和绿茶有区别吗?

Hóngchá hé lǜchá yǒu qūbié ma?

What is the difference between black tea and green tea?



情景会话　Situational Conversation

(Here, some people are standing in front of the service counter of a karaoke place.)

男　士:小姐,我要一个卡拉 OK 房间。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ yào yí gè kǎlā OK fángjiān.

Miss, I want a Karaoke room.

服务员:您要大房间还是小房间?

Nín yào dà fángjiān háishi xiǎo fángjiān?

What size room do you want, a large room or a small room?

男　士:大房间和小房间有什么区别吗?

Dà fángjiān hé xiǎo fángjiān yǒu shénme qūbié ma?

What is the difference between the big room and the small one?

服务员:大房间一个小时 90 块,小房间一个小时 60 块。你们有多少人?

Dà fángjiān yí gè xiǎoshí jiǔshí kuài, xiǎo fángjiān yí gè xiǎoshí liùshí kuài. Nǐmen yǒu duōshao rén?

The big room is 90 yuan per hour, and the small room is 60 yuan per hour. How many people do you have?

男　士:5 个。

Wǔ gè.

Five people.

服务员:小房间就可以。

Xiǎo fángjiān jiù kěyǐ.

Then the small room is all right.

男　士：你们这儿有英文歌曲吗？
Nǐmen zhèr yǒu Yīngwén gēqǔ ma?
Are there any English songs?

服务员：有，有很多老歌。
Yǒu, yǒu hěn duō lǎo gē.
Yes, there are many old songs.

男　士：没关系，我会唱一些中国歌。
Méi guānxi, wǒ huì chàng yìxiē Zhōngguó gē.
That's all right. I can sing some Chinese songs.

服务员：要饮料，可以找服务员。这边请。
Yào yǐnliào, kěyǐ zhǎo fúwùyuán. Zhèibian qǐng.
If you want to order some drinks, you can tell the waiter. This way, please.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

卡拉 OK	kǎlā OK	karaoke
大房间	dà fángjiān	big room
小房间	xiǎo fángjiān	small room
歌厅	gētīng	singing hall
包间	bāojiān	chartered room at the theatre, opera house, etc.
辞典	cídiǎn	dictionary

点歌单	diǎngēdān	songbook; list of songs
果汁儿	guǒzhīr	fruit juice
话筒	huàtǒng	microphone
遥控器	yáokòngqì	remote control
区别	qūbié	difference
你们这儿	nǐmen zhèr	you here; in this place
我们那儿	wǒmen nàr	where we are; over there
英文歌曲	Yīngwén gēqǔ	English song
中文歌曲	Zhōngwén gēqǔ	Chinese song
法文歌曲	Fǎwén gēqǔ	French song
俄文歌曲	Éwén gēqǔ	Russian song

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你要大房间还是小房间?

   Nǐ yào dà fángjiān háishi xiǎo fángjiān?

英语辞典 Yīngyǔ cídiǎn	汉语辞典 Hànyǔ cídiǎn
啤酒 píjiǔ	果汁儿 guǒzhīr
去酒吧 qù jiǔbā	去歌厅 qù gētīng
唱中文歌 chàng Zhōngwén gē	唱 英文歌 chàng Yīngwén gē

2. 大房间和小房间有区别吗?

Dà fángjiān hé xiǎo fángjiān yǒu qūbié ma?

这个话筒 zhèige huàtǒng	那个话筒 nèige huàtǒng
三号包间 sān hào bāojiān	四号包间 sì hào bāojiān
这个遥控器 zhèige yáokòngqì	那个遥控器 nèige yáokòngqì
这辆车 zhèi liàng chē	那辆车 nèi liàng chē

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你问朋友,喝茶还是喝咖啡。

   Nǐ wèn péngyou, hē chá háishi hē kāfēi.

   You ask your friend if he would like tea or coffee.

2. 怎么问 A 和 B 有什么不同?

   Zěnme wèn A hé B yǒu shénme bùtóng?

   What do you say if you want to know the difference between A and B?

第三十八课 上 网

Dì-sānshíbā Kè Shàng Wǎng

Lesson 38 Get on the Internet



句型 Sentence Pattern:

1. 你可以把……给我吗?

   Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ……gěi wǒ ma?

2. 我们以后用……联系吧!

   Wǒmen yǐhòu yòng……liánxì ba!



你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国上网很方便,有非常多的网吧,也非常便宜,2至5块人民币一小时。如果你自己带有笔记本电脑,也可以在宾馆的房间里通过电话线上网,费用会和电话费一起在结账时结算。

Many many cybercafes make it convenient to get on line in China. The price, usually 2 to 5 *kuai* per hour, is pretty low. If you have a laptop computer, you can use the phone lines in your hotel room to get on the internet, and the fees will be calculated as part of your phone bill when you checked out.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 上网	shàng wǎng	to get on the Internet to surf the Internet
2. 电脑	diànnǎo	computer
3. 互联网	hùliánwǎng	Internet
4. 聊天	liáo tiān	to chat
5. 资料	zīliào	information; data
6. 地址	dìzhǐ	address
7. 电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujiàn	electronic mail (e-mail)

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你可以把你的 e-mail 地址给我吗?

Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ de e-mail dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?

Can you give me your e-mail address?

- Computers are becoming more and more popular in China. It is fairly simple nowadays to just use common Internet terms when speaking to Chinese people, as they tend to be familiar with words like Internet, e-mail, etc. When you want to know a person's e-mail address, a question like this can be asked: "Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ de e-mail dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?" For other addresses, you can say as follows:

  (1)你可以把你家的地址给我吗?

  Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ jiā de dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?

  Can you give me your home address?

  (2)你可以把你的通信地址给我吗?

  Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ de tōngxìn dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?

  Can you give me your mailing address?

2. 以后我们用 e-mail 联系吧!

Yǐhòu wǒmen yòng e-mail liánxì ba!

Later on let's use e-mail to keep in touch!

- After getting the friend's e-mail address, you can suggest that he/she to communicate with you via e-mail by saying: "Yǐhòu wǒmen yòng e-mail liánxì ba!" The following are more examples:

(1)以后我们用电话联系吧!

Yǐhòu wǒmen yòng diànhuà liánxì ba!

Later on let's keep in touch over the phone!

(2)以后我们写信联系吧!

Yǐhòu wǒmen xiě xìn liánxì ba!

Later on let's keep in touch with letters!



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Two old classmates happen to meet each other on the street.)

男士:最近你在做些什么?

Zuìjìn nǐ zài zuò xiē shénme?

What have you been doing lately?

女士:我家买了一台电脑。我每天在家里上互联网。

Wǒ jiā mǎi le yì tái diànnǎo. Wǒ měitiān zài jiālǐ shàng hùliánwǎng.

My family has bought a computer. I go on the Internet every day.

男士:上网聊天吗?

Shàng wǎng liáo tiān ma?

Do you chat online?

女士:不,主要是看一些资料。

Bù, zhǔyào shì kàn yìxiē zīliào.

No. I mainly use it to get some information.

男士:你可以把你的 e-mail 地址给我吗?

Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ nǐ de e-mail dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?

Can you give me your e-mail address?

女士:当然。

Dāngrán.

Certainly.

男士:我可以给你发电子邮件。

Wǒ kěyǐ gěi nǐ fā diànzǐ yóujiàn.

I want to send you e-mail.

女士:我的 e-mail 地址是:lihong@ edu.cn

Wǒ de e-mail dìzhǐ shì: lihong@ edu.cn.

My e-mail address is: lihong@ edu.cn.

男士:谢谢。我们以后用 e-mail 联系吧!

Xièxie. Wǒmen yǐhòu yòng e-mail liánxì ba!

Thanks. Later on let's use e-mail to keep in touch!

女士:没问题。

Méi wèntí。

No problem.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

住宅地址	zhùzhái dìzhǐ	home address
学校地址	xuéxiào dìzhǐ	school address
单位地址	dānwèi dìzhǐ	unit address
通信地址	tōngxìn dìzhǐ	mailing address
e-mail 地址/电子邮件地址	e-mail dìzhǐ/diànzǐ yóujiàn dìzhǐ	e-mail address
信件联系	xìnjiàn liánxì	to contact by letters

电话联系	diànhuà liánxì	to contact via telephone
电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujiàn	e-mail
发送传真	fāsòng chuánzhēn	to send facsimile; fax

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你可以把<u>你的 e-mail</u> 地址给我吗?
   Nǐ kěyǐ bǎ <u>nǐ de e-mail</u> dìzhǐ gěi wǒ ma?

你新家的
nǐ xīn jiā de
你们公司的通信
nǐmen gōngsī de tōngxìn
你学校的
nǐ xuéxiào de
你单位的
nǐ dānwèi de

2. 以后我们<u>用e-mail</u> 联系吧!
   Yǐhòu wǒmen <u>yòng e-mail</u> liánxì ba!

打电话
dǎ diànhuà
写信
xiě xìn
发传真
fā chuánzhēn
用手机
yòng shǒujī

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 向你的朋友要通信地址。

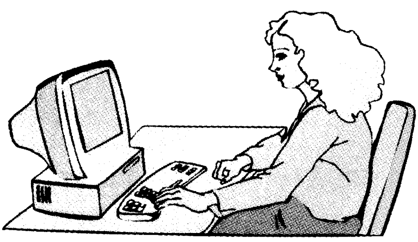
   Xiàng nǐ de péngyou yào tōngxìn dìzhǐ.

   You ask for your friend's e-mail address.

2. 你希望你的朋友以后用电话和你联系，怎么说?

   Nǐ xīwàng nǐ de péngyou yǐhòu yòng diànhuà hé nǐ liánxì, zěnme shuō?

   You hope that your friend will keep in touch with you by telephone.



第三十九课　去　酒　吧

Dì-sānshíjiǔ Kè　Qù Jiǔbā

Lesson 39　Go to a Bar



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 你们这儿有什么牌子的……?
   Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de……?
2. 我要……,再要……。
   Wǒ yào……, zài yào…… .

你知道吗? Do you know?

在北京、上海这样的大城市，有很多酒吧。有西方各种风格的，也有中国传统风格的。有的酒吧在固定的时间里有乐队表演。

There are a lot of bars in big cities such as Beijing and Shanghai. Some bars are western style, and some are traditional Chinese style. Bands perform in some bars at fixed times.

生词　Vocabulary

1. 酒吧	jiǔbā	bar
2. 牌子	páizi	brand; trademark
3. 威士忌	wēishìjì	whisky
4. 白兰地	báilándì	brandy
5. 果盘	guǒpán	a bowl of fruit
6. 玉米花	yùmǐhuā	popcorn

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你们这儿有什么牌子的啤酒?
Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de píjiǔ?
What brands of beer do you have here?

- In major cities like Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou, etc., there are a number of bars. If you are free in the evening, you may want to visit a bar with friends to have some

drinks. In a bar, we may ask a bartender about the available brands of beer like this: "Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de píjiǔ?" Here are more examples of how to ask for brands of things:

(1)你们这儿有什么牌子的牛奶?

Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de niúnǎi?

What brands of milk do you have here?

(2)你们这儿有什么牌子的手表?

Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de shǒubiǎo?

What brands of watches do you have here?

2. 我要一瓶青岛啤酒,再要一个果盘。

Wǒ yào yì píng Qīngdǎo Píjiǔ, zài yào yí gè guǒpán.

I want a bottle of Qingdao Beer and also a bowl of fruit.

● We can casually tell a waiter a couple of things that we want to order by saying: "Wǒ yào……, zài yào……." You can also order merchandise in a supermarket or in a shop with this structure:

(1)我要一个面包,再要一杯牛奶。

Wǒ yào yí gè miànbāo, zài yào yì bēi niúnǎi.

I want a piece of bread and milk.

(2)我要一个本子,再要一枝笔。

Wǒ yào yí gè běnzi, zài yào yì zhī bǐ.

I want a notebook and a pen.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(A man is visiting a bar.)

服务员:先生,您好。您喝点儿什么?

Xiānsheng, nín hǎo. Nín hē diǎnr shénme?

Good evening, sir. What would you like to drink?

男 士:你们这儿有什么牌子的啤酒?

Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de píjiǔ?

What brands of beer do you have here?

服务员:中国的、日本的都有,还有白兰地、威士忌。这是酒单,请您看一下。

Zhōngguó de, Rìběn de dōu yǒu, háiyǒu báilándì, wēishìjì. Zhè shì jiǔdān, qǐng nín kàn yíxià.

We have Chinese and Japanese beer. We also have brandy and whisky. Here is a drink list. Please have a look.

男 士:我要一瓶青岛啤酒,再要一个果盘。

Wǒ yào yì píng Qīngdǎo Píjiǔ, zài yào yí gè guǒpán.

Let me have a bottle of Qingdao Beer and also a bowl of fruit.

服务员:还要别的东西吗?我们的爆米花很好吃。

Hái yào bié de dōngxi ma? Wǒmen de bàomǐhuā hěn hǎochī.

Anything else? Our popcorn is quite delicious.

男 士:不要了。要的时候,我叫你。

Bú yào le. Yào de shíhou, wǒ jiào nǐ.

No. If I need anything else, I'll call you.

服务员:好的,请您稍等。

Hǎo de, qǐng nín shāo děng.

All right. Please wait a moment.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

中国酒	Zhōngguójiǔ	Chinese food alcohol; Chinese wine
洋酒	yángjiǔ	foreign wine; foreign food alcohol
葡萄酒	pútaojiǔ	wine
啤酒	píjiǔ	beer
白酒	báijiǔ	spirit; alcohol; distilled from grain
茅台酒	Máotái Jiǔ	Maotai
威士忌	wēishìjì	whisky
白兰地	báilándì	brandy
杜松子酒	dùsōngzǐ jiǔ	gin
伏特加	fútèjiā	vodka
苦艾酒	kǔ'ài jiǔ	absinth
龙舌兰酒	lóngshélán jiǔ	pulque
法国科涅克白兰地(干邑)	Fǎguó Kēnièkè báilándì(gānyì)	cognac
果汁	guǒzhīr	fruit juice
橙汁	chéngzhīr	orange juice
果盘	guǒpán	a bowl of fruit

干果	gānguǒ	dried fruits
巧克力	qiǎokèlì	chocolate
爆米花	bàomǐhuā	popcorn

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你们这儿有什么牌子的啤酒?

Nǐmen zhèr yǒu shénme páizi de píjiǔ?

洋酒
yángjiǔ
手机
shǒujī
皮带
pídài
西服
xīfú

2. 我要一瓶青岛啤酒,再要一个果盘。

Wǒ yào yì píng Qīngdǎo Píjiǔ, zài yào yí gè guǒpán.

一杯橙汁	一个爆米花
yì bēi chéngzhī	yí gè bàomǐhuā
一杯威士忌	一盘干果
yì bēi wēishìjì	yì pán gānguǒ
一个本子	一支笔
yí gè běnzi	yì zhī bǐ
一条皮带	一条领带
yì tiáo pídài	yì tiáo lǐngdài

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 问你的朋友,这个地方有什么牌子的巧克力。

   Wèn nǐ de péngyou, zhèige dìfang yǒu shénme páizi de qiǎokèlì。

   You ask your friend what brands of chocolate are sold in this place。

2. 告诉酒吧的服务员,你要一杯啤酒,再要一杯橙汁儿。

   Gàosu jiǔbā de fúwùyuán, nǐ yào yì bēi píjiǔ, zài yào yì bēi chéngzhīr.

   Tell the bar-mam you want a glass of beer and a glass of orange juice.



第四十课　问电话号码和寻呼号

Dì-sìshí Kè　Wèn Diànhuà Hàomǎ hé Xúnhūhào

Lesson 40　Ask Telephone Number and Page Number



句型　**Sentence Pattern:**

1. 请问……的电话号码是多少?

   Qǐngwèn ……de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

2. 请呼……。

   Qǐng hū…… .

你知道吗? Do you know?

查询电话号码,可以使用电话号码簿,也可以打 114 查询。如果查外地的查号台,是所查询地区的区号 + 114。114 是收费的,北京地区是每次 1 元人民币。拨打一次可以查多个号码。

When looking for a telephone number, Chinese people either use a telephone books or they dial 114 for directory inquiries. If you want to know a number out of Beijing, you dial the area code plus 114. You pay one *kuai* each time you dial 114 and you can ask for more than one telephone numbers.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 查号台	cháhàotái	directory inquiries station
2. 记录	jìlù	to take notes; to record; to write something down
3. 占线	zhàn xiàn	the line is engaged; busy
4. 呼	hū	to call
5. 手机	shǒujī	mobile phone; cell phone
6. 挂(机)	guà (jī)	to hang up (the receiver)

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 请问,北京饭店的电话号码是多少?
Qǐngwèn, Běijīng Fàndiàn de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

Hello, what is the telephone number of the Beijing Hotel?

- If you are trying to find a telephone number, just dial 114 for directory inquiries, and ask the operator by saying: "Qǐng wèn, ……de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?" The following are more examples:

  (1)请问,南京大学的电话号码是多少?

  Qǐngwèn, Nánjīng Dàxué de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

  Hello, what is the telephone number of Nanjing University?

  (2)请问,联想电脑公司的电话号码是多少?

  Qǐngwèn, Liánxiǎng Diànnǎo Gōngsī de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

  Hello, what is the telephone number of the Legend Computer Company?

2. 请呼 11357。

Qǐng hū yāo yāo sān wǔ qī.

Please page 11357.

- Nowadays, more and more communication facilities are available. There are telephones, pagers/beepers (In Chinese, it's called "BP ji".), mobile phones, etc. When you want to contact someone's pager, just tell the operator the pager's number by saying: "Qǐng hū……." Or you can leave a message directly on the beeper using the character-message function. Here are some examples:

  (1) 请呼三遍 7386。

  Qǐng hū sān biàn qī sān bā liù.

  Please call 7386 three times.

(2) 请呼 1715,让他马上回家。

Qǐng hū yāo qī yāo wǔ, ràng tā mǎshàng huí jiā.

Please call 1715, and tell him to come home righ

away.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a lady calls the directory inquiries.)

女 士:114,查号台。

Yāo yāo sì, cháhàotái.

One one four, directory inquires.

(Dialing the number)

总 机:您好!

Nín hǎo!

Hello!

女 士:请问,北京饭店的电话号码是多少?

Qǐngwèn, Běijīng Fàndiàn de diànhuà hàomǎ s

duōshao?

Hello, what is the telephone number of the Beijing Hote

(录音):请您记录:65317766。

Qǐng nín jìlù: liù wǔ sān yāo qī qī liù liù.

Please write this down: 65317766.

…… ……

服务员:您好,北京饭店。请问您要哪里?

Nín hǎo, Běijīng Fàndiàn. Qǐngwèn nǐ yào nǎlǐ?

Hello, Beijing Hotel. Who would you like to speak to

女　士：请接4508房间。

Qǐng jiē sì wǔ líng bā fángjiān.

Please transfer my line to Room 4508.

服务员：请稍等。4508占线。

Qǐng shāo děng. Sì wǔ líng bā zhàn xiàn.

Wait a moment, please. The line is busy.

会话二

(Here is a man sending a message to his friend's beeper. "Huáxùn" is a beeper service station.)

总机：你好，华讯105号。

Nǐ hǎo, Huáxùn yāo líng wǔ hào.

Hello. This is Huaxun Station, No.105.

男士：请呼11357。

Qǐng hū yāo yāo sān wǔ qī.

Please call 11357.

总机：先生贵姓？

Xiānsheng guì xìng?

What's your surname, please?

男士：我姓王。

Wǒ xìng Wáng.

My surname is Wang.

总机：请留言。

Qǐng liú yán.

What is your message?

男士：方便请回电话：13671358899。

Fāngbiàn qǐng huí diànhuà: yāo sān liù qī yāo sān wǔ bā bā jiǔ jiǔ.

Please call 1367-135-8899.

总机:还有吗?

Hái yǒu ma?

Anything else?

男士:没有了。

Méiyǒu le.

No.

总机:好的,请挂机。

Hǎo de, qǐng guà jī.

OK. Please hang up.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

饭店	fàndiàn	hotel
前台	qiántái	front desk
大堂	dàtáng	lobby
餐厅	cāntīng	dining room
商务中心	shāngwù zhōngxīn	business centre
客房部	kèfángbù	guest room department
商品部	shāngpǐnbù	commodity department
大学	dàxué	university
商场	shāngchǎng	department store
电脑公司	diànnǎo gōngsī	computer company
中国旅行社	Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè	China Travel Agency

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 请问，北京饭店的电话号码是多少？

Qǐngwèn, Běijīng Fàndiàn de diànhuà hàomǎ shì duōshao?

王经理
Wáng jīnglǐ
中国旅行社
Zhōngguó Lǚxíngshè
商务中心
shāngwù zhōngxīn
西单商场
Xīdān Shāngchǎng

2. 请呼11357。

Qǐng hū yāo yāo sān wǔ qī.

两遍 4978
liǎng biàn sì jiǔ qī bā
666333，让他回家
liù liù liù sān sān sān, ràng tā huí jiā
1715，让他给我回电话
yāo qī yāo wǔ, ràng tā gěi wǒ huí diànhuà
8989，告诉他我 7 点到
bā jiǔ bā jiǔ, gàosu tā wǒ qī diǎn dào

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 用中文向朋友打听一个饭店的电话号码。

Yòng Zhōngwén xiàng péngyou dǎting yí gè fàndiàn de diànhuà hàomǎ.

You use Chinese to ask your friend the telephone number of a

hotel.

2. 练习用中文呼一个人。

Liànxí yòng Zhōngwén hū yí gè rén.

Practice paging a person in Chinese.



第四十一课　打　电　话

Dì-sìshíyī Kè　　Dǎ Diànhuà

Lesson 41　Make a call



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……你有空吗?

   ……nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

2. ……,你有什么事吗?

   ……, nǐ yǒu shénme shì ma?



你知道吗？Do you know?

中国的电信事业发展很快，现在普通电话、手机和公共电话都非常普及。在大城市，公共电话大部分是 IC 卡电话，要专门买 IC 电话卡，在报刊亭一般都可以买到电话卡，还可以打折。现在还不能用银行信用卡打 IC 卡公共电话。手机不管打电话还是接电话都是收费的。

Chinese telecommunications are developing very fast. Now telephones, mobile phones and public telephones are common to Chinese people, i.e. cities usually have IC public telephones. You can get IC telephone cards at newspaper stalls cheaply. You cannot use bank cards or credit cards to make IC public telephone calls. You have to pay no matter whether you are making or receiving a call on a mobile phone.



生词　Vocabulary

1. 空	kòng	free; free time
2. 聚会	jùhuì	get-together party
3. 参加	cānjiā	to take part in
4. 分机	fēnjī	extension
5. 出去	chūqu	going out

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 周六晚上你有空吗?

   Zhōuliù wǎnshang nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

   Are you free on Saturday morning?

   - The question "……nǐ yǒu kòng ma?" is often used to make an invitation. The following are some examples:

     (1) 明天下午你有空吗?

     Míngtiān xiàwǔ nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

     Are you free tomorrow afternoon?

     (2) 下个星期四你有空吗?

     Xià gè xīngqīsì nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

     Are you free next Thursday?

2. 他不在,你有什么事情要转告吗?

   Tā bú zài, nǐ yǒu shénme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?

   He is not in. Do you have anything to tell him?

   - When you pick up an incoming call, but it is not for you, and the person it is for is not in, you may ask the caller if he/she wishes to leave a message. You can ask: "……, nǐ yǒu shéme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?" Here are the examples:

     (1) 他出去了,你有什么事情要转告吗?

     Tā chūqu le, nǐ yǒu shénme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?

     He has gone out. Do you have anything to tell him?

(2) 他回家了,你有什么事情要转告吗?

Tā huí jiā le, nǐ yǒu shénme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?

He already went home. Do you have anything to tell him?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here, a man is calling his friend.)

王军:喂,请问,是东方学校吗?

Wèi, qǐngwèn, shì Dōngfāng Xuéxiào ma?

Hello. Is this Dongfang School?

女士:对,你找谁?

Duì, nǐ zhǎo shéi?

Yes. Whom do you want to speak to?

王军:请问,杰克先生在吗?

Qǐngwèn, Jiékè xiānsheng zài ma?

May I speak to Mr. Jack, please?

女士:请稍等。杰克,电话。

Qǐng shāo děng. Jiékè, diànhuà.

Wait a moment, please. Jack, your telephone.

…… ……

杰克:喂,你好,我是杰克。你是哪位?

Wèi, nǐ hǎo, wǒ shì Jiékè. Nǐ shì nǎ wèi?

Hello, this is Jack. Who is this?

王军:我是王军。你们的电话太难打了,我打了好几次才打

通。

Wǒ shì Wáng Jūn. Nǐmen de diànhuà tài nán dǎ le, wǒ dǎ le hǎo jǐ cì cái dǎ tōng.

This is Wang Jun. Your line is quite busy. I have tried calling several times.

杰克:对不起。你有什么事吗?

Duìbuqǐ. Nǐ yǒu shénme shì ma?

Sorry. What's going on?

王军:周六晚上你有空吗? 我们有一个聚会,想请你一起参加。

Zhōuliù wǎnshang nǐ yǒu kòng ma? Wǒmen yǒu yí ge jùhuì, xiǎng qǐng nǐ yìqǐ cānjiā.

Are you free this Saturday evening? We'd like to invite you to come to our party.

杰克:好,我一定去。

Hǎo, wǒ yídìng qù.

OK. I will be there.

会话二

(Here, a woman is making a phone call.)

妈妈:喂,请接分机 2694。

Wèi, qǐng jiē fēnjī èr liù jiǔ sì.

Hello. Extension 2694, please.

……

男士:喂? 你找谁?

Wèi? Nǐ zhǎo shuí?

Hello? Who are you looking for?

妈妈:请问王军在吗?

Qǐngwèn Wáng Jūn zài ma?

Is Wang Jun in?

男士:他出去了,可能晚上才回来。你有什么事情要转告吗?

Tā chūqu le, kěnéng wǎnshang cái huílai. Nǐ yǒu shénme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?

He went out. He might be back in the evening. Do you have anything to tell him?

妈妈:我是他妈妈,麻烦你让他回来以后给家里打个电话。

Wǒ shì tā māma, máfan nǐ ràng tā huílai yǐhòu gěi jiālǐ dǎ gè diànhuà.

I am his mother. Please ask him to phone home when comes back.

男士:没问题。

Méi wèntí.

No problem.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

星期一(二、三…)	xīngqīyī (èr, sān …)	Monday (Tuesday, Wednesday...)
星期天/日	Xīngqītiān/rì	Sunday
周一(二、三…)	zhōuyī (èr, sān …)	Monday (Tuesday, Wednesday ...)
周日	zhōurì	Sunday

下周一	xià zhōuyī	next Monday
下个星期四	xià gè xīngqīsì	next Thursday
周末	zhōumò	weekend
早上	zǎoshang	early morning
上午	shàngwǔ	morning; forenoon
中午	zhōngwǔ	noon; midday
下午	xiàwǔ	afternoon
晚上	wǎnshang	evening; night
出去	chūqu	to go out
回家	huí jiā	to go home
开会	kāi huì	to have a meeting

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 周六晚上你有空吗？

   Zhōuliù wǎnshang nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

星期五
xīngqīwǔ
下周四晚上
xià zhōusì wǎnshang
明天早上 8 点
míngtiān zǎoshang bā diǎn
这个周末
zhèige zhōumò

2. 他<u>不在</u>，你有什么事情要转告吗？

Tā <u>bú zài</u>, nǐ yǒu shénme shìqing yào zhuǎngào ma?

在开会
zài kāi huì
在上课
zài shàng kè
在洗澡
zài xǐzǎo
去公司了
qù gōngsī le

三、能力训练（Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.）

1. 打电话约一个朋友，星期六晚上去电影院看电影。

   Dǎ diànhuà yuē yí gè péngyou, xīngqīliù wǎnshang qù diànyǐngyuàn kàn diànyǐng.

   You call a friend and ask him/her to go to a movie on Saturday evening.

2. 你接了一个电话，这个人说，要找你的朋友，可是你的朋友不在，你怎么说？

   Nǐ jiēle yí gè diànhuà, zhèige rén shuō, yào zhǎo nǐ de péngyou, kěshì nǐ de péngyou bú zài, nǐ zěnme shuō?

   You are receiving a phone call. The person on the phone says that he would like to speak to your friend, but your friend is not in. What do you say to the person?

第四十二课　交　朋　友

Dì-sìshíèr Kè　　Jiāo Péngyou

Lesson 42　Make Friends



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 你好，我叫……，在……工作。你呢？

   Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào……, zài……gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?

2. 你和……是怎么认识的？

   Nǐ hé……shì zěnme rènshi de?

3. ……以后，我……。

   …… yǐhòu, wǒ…….

你知道吗？Do you know?

中国人对外国人很热情，喜欢和外国人聊天，和中国人交朋友很容易。中国人喜欢问朋友的年龄、挣多少钱、有没有男(女)朋友这一类问题，可能外国人会觉得这些是自己的隐私，但中国人并不觉得这些是隐私，只是很普通的问题。遇到中国朋友问到这些问题时，如果你不愿意回答，最好直接告诉他们你的感觉。中国人一般都会很尊重别人的习惯。

Chinese people are very friendly to foreigners and like chatting with them. It is easy to make friends with Chinese people. The Chinese tend to ask friends' ages, incomes and marriage status. They consider these questions to be common and normal, not an invasion of privacy. If you do not want to answer these questions, you just tell them your thoughts and feelings directly. Chinese people often show respect toward others' values and practices.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 交(朋友)	jiāo(péngyou)	to make (friends); to associate with
2. 展览	zhǎnlǎn	exhibition; to put on display; to show
3. 图书馆	túshūguǎn	library
4. 毕业	bìyè	to graduate; to finish school
5. 名片	míngpiàn	name card; business card

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你好,我叫李南,在展览公司工作。你呢?

   Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Lǐ Nán, zài zhǎnlǎn gōngsī gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?

   Hi. I am Li Nan. I work in an exhibition company. How about you?

   - Each year millions of people all over the world come to China to work, to study or to travel. Perhaps you are one of them. You will meet many people, and some of them might become your friends. When getting to know a new friend, you may start with an introduction like: "Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào……, zài……gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?" Now the following are more examples:

     (1)你好,我叫张友文,在计算机公司工作。你呢?

     Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Zhāng Yǒuwén, zài jìsuànjī gōngsī gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?

     Hello. My name is Zhang Youwen. I work in a computer company. How about you?

     (2)你好,我叫李卫,在 IBM 工作。你呢?

     Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Lǐ Wèi, zài IBM gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?

     Hello. My name is Li Wei. I work at IBM. How about you?

2. 你和阿里是怎么认识的?

   Nǐ hé Ālǐ shì zěnme rènshi de?

How did you get to know Ali?

- If you wish to know how the relationship between your friends started, you may ask like this: "Nǐ hé …… shì zěnme rènshi de?" Here are more examples:

  (1)你和张友文是怎么认识的?

  Nǐ hé Zhāng Yǒuwén shì zěnme rènshi de?

  How did you get to know Zhang Youwen?

  (2)你和李老师是怎么认识的?

  Nǐ hé Lǐ lǎoshī shì zěnme rènshi de?

  How did you get to know Teacher Li?

3. 大学毕业以后,我来北京工作。

Dàxué bìyè yǐhòu, wǒ lái Běijīng gōngzuò.

After graduated from university, I came to Beijing to work.

- During a casual talk with a friend, you may exchange some experiences with him/her. You may say: "…… yǐhòu, wǒ ……." Here are more examples:

  (1) 2000 年以后,我到上海学习。

  Èr-líng-líng-líng nián yǐhòu, wǒ dào Shànghǎi xuéxí.

  Since the year 2000 I have been studying in Shanghai.

  (2) 1997 年以后,我居住在香港。

  Yī-jiǔ-jiǔ-qī nián yǐhòu, wǒ jūzhù zài Xiānggǎng.

  I have been living in Hongkong since 1997.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(A girl meets new friends at Ali's birthday party.)

男 士:你好,我叫李南,在展览公司工作。你呢?

Nǐ hǎo, wǒ jiào Lǐ Nán, zài zhǎnlǎn gōngsī gōngzuò. Nǐ ne?

Hello. My name is Linan. I work in an exhibition company. How about you?

女　士:我叫魏淑丽,在阿里他们大学的图书馆工作。

Wǒ jiào Wèi Shūlì, zài Ālǐ tāmen dàxué de túshūguǎn gōngzuò.

My name is Wei Shuli. I work at the library of the university where Ali studies.

李　南:你和阿里是怎么认识的?

Nǐ hé Ālǐ shì zěnme rènshi de?

How do you know Ali?

魏淑丽:我常帮他借书。你们呢,怎么认识的?

Wǒ cháng bāng tā jiè shū. Nǐmen ne, zěnme rènshi de?

I often help him borrow books. How about you? How did you get to know him?

李　南:阿里刚来北京的时候,我是他的汉语老师。

Ālǐ gāng lái Běijīng de shíhou, wǒ shì tā de Hànyǔ lǎoshī.

When Ali first arrived in Beijing, I was his Chinese teacher.

魏淑丽:你是北京人吗?

Nǐ shì Běijīngrén ma?

Are you a Beijinger?

李　南:我是上海人,大学毕业以后,我来北京工作。这是我的名片。

Wǒ shì Shànghǎirén, dàxué bìyè yǐhòu, wǒ lái Běijīng

gōngzuò. Zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn。

I am Shanghainese. I came to Beijing to work after I graduated from university. This is my name card.

魏淑丽：谢谢，我没有带名片，一会儿我给你写一个电话号码。

Xièxie, wǒ méiyǒu dài míngpiàn, yíhuìr wǒ gěi nǐ xiě yí gè diànhuà hàomǎ.

Thank you. I didn't bring my name card. I will write down my phone number for you in a moment.

李 南：谢谢！

Xièxie!

Thank you!

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

展览公司	zhǎnlǎn gōngsī	exhibition company
计算机公司	jìsuànjī gōngsī	computer company
房地产公司	fángdìchǎn gōngsī	real estate company
贸易公司	màoyì gōngsī	trading company
中介公司	zhōngjiè gōngsī	intermediary company
图书馆	túshūguǎn	library
展览馆	zhǎnlǎnguǎn	exhibition center
天文馆	tiānwénguǎn	planetarium
博物馆	bówùguǎn	museum
北京人	Běijīngrén	Beijinger; Beijing people

上海人	Shànghǎirén	Shanghainese; Shanghai people
美国人	Měiguórén	American
法国人	Fǎguórén	French
西班牙人	Xībānyárén	Spanish; Spaniard
高中毕业	gāozhōng bìyè	high school graduate
初中毕业	chūzhōng bìyè	junior school graduate
小学毕业	xiǎoxué bìyè	elementary school graduate
大学毕业	dàxué bìyè	university undergraduate (bachelor's degree)
硕士毕业	shuòshì bìyè	university graduate (master's degree)
博士毕业	bóshì bìyè	university doctorate (doctor's degree)

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我叫李南,在展览公司工作。

   Wǒ jiào Lǐ Nán, zài zhǎnlǎn gōngsī gōngzuò.

王力 Wáng Lì	博物馆 bówùguǎn
赵明 Zhào Míng	贸易公司 màoyì gōngsī
张平 Zhāng Píng	饭店 fàndiàn
魏淑丽 Wèi Shūlì	北京大学图书馆 Běijīng Dàxué Túshūguǎn

2. <u>大学毕业</u>以后，我<u>来北京</u>工作。
<u>Dàxué bìyè</u> yǐhòu, wǒ <u>lái Běijīng</u> gōngzuò.

从美国回来 cóng Měiguó huílai 中学毕业 zhōngxué bìyè 博士毕业 bóshì bìyè 去广州 qù Guǎngzhōu	来上海 lái Shànghǎi 来这个公司 lái zhèige gōngsī 在香港 zài Xiānggǎng 在一家房地产公司 zài yì jiā fángdìchǎn gōngsī

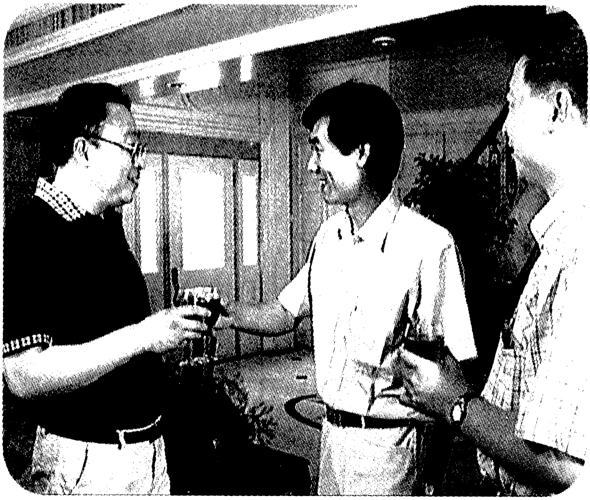
三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 请练习做一次自我介绍。
Qǐng liànxí zuò yí cì zìwǒ jièshào.
Please make a self-introduction.
2. 问你的朋友，他/她和他的妻子/她的丈夫是怎么认识的。
Wèn nǐ de péngyou, tā/tā hé tā de qīzi/zhàngfu shì zěnme rènshi de.
Ask your friend how he/her got to know his/her wife/husband.

第四十三课　参加聚会

Dì-sìshísān Kè　Cānjiā Jùhuì

Lesson 43 Take Part in a Party



句型 Sentence Pattern:

1. 祝你……。

   Zhù nǐ…….

2. 对于您的……,我表示祝贺。

   Duìyú nín de……,wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

3. 请你……,不要客气。

   Qǐng nǐ……,bú yào kèqi.

你知道吗？Do you know?

在中国的传统中，结婚、生孩子、搬家、升学等，都要请客祝贺。但是现在很多年轻人不那么讲究了。朋友聚会一般不必自带食品，到朋友家里聚会的话，带点小礼物就可以了，食品、饮料等都是主人准备。

In Chinese tradition people hold celebrations at a wedding, child birth, moving, and acceptance to college, but now young people are not particular about those conventions. You do not need to bring your own food to a party. Food and drinks are prepared by the host. Some small gifts are necessary however.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 参加	cānjiā	to join; to take part
2. 随便	suíbiàn	to do as one pleases
3. 搬家	bān jiā	to move (house); to remove
4. 参观	cānguān	to visit; to have a look around
5. 表示	biǎoshì	to show; to express; to indicate
6. 祝贺	zhùhè	to congratulate
7. 祝	zhù	to express good wishes; wish

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 祝你生日快乐!

   Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

   Happy birthday!

   - We will sometimes attend a party such as a graduation party, new house party, birthday party, etc., held by our friends. We normally congratulate our friends by saying either "Zhù nǐ……" or "Duìyú nǐ de……, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè!" For instance, when a friend is having his birthday party, you can say: "Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!" Here are more examples:

     (1) 祝你一路平安!

     Zhù nǐ yí lù píng'ān!

     I wish you a pleasant trip!

     (2) 祝你一切顺利!

     Zhù nǐ yíqiè shùnlì!

     Wish you all success!

2. 对于您的搬家,我表示祝贺。

   Duìyú nín de bānjiā, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

   Congratulations on your moving into a new house.

   - The above sentence is used to congratulate someone on a special occasion such as receiving good news, moving into a new house, getting a promotion, being accepted to a university, etc. Here are more examples:

(1)对于您的成功,我表示祝贺。

Duìyú nín de chénggōng, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

Congratulations on your success.

(2)对于你二十岁的生日,我表示祝贺。

Duìyú nǐ èrshí suì de shēngri, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

Congratulations on your twentieth birthday.

3. 请你随便吃,随便喝,不用客气。

Qǐng nǐ suíbiàn chī, suíbiàn hē, bú yòng kèqi.

Please eat and drink freely. Make yourself at home.

- If you are the host of a party and you want your guests to enjoy food and drink as they do at home, you will say: "Qǐng nǐ suíbiàn chī, suíbiàn hē, búyòng kèqi." "suíbiàn" here means "behave casually and informally". Here are more examples:

(1)请随便看,不用客气。

Qǐng suíbiàn kàn, bú yòng kèqi.

Please look around at will. Make yourself at home.

(2)请随便玩儿,不用客气。

Qǐng suíbiàn wánr, bú yòng kèqi.

Please enjoy. Make yourself comfortable.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(A man is wishing his friend, Mike, a happy birthday.)

男士:你好! 老朋友,祝你生日快乐!

Nǐ hǎo! Lǎo péngyou, zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

Hello, my old friend. Happy birthday to you!

麦克:谢谢！请你随便吃,随便喝,不用客气。

Xièxie! Qǐng nǐ suíbiàn chī, suíbiàn hē, bú yòng kèqi.

Thank you! Please enjoy the food and drink. Make yourself at home.

男士:谢谢,我知道了。

Xièxie, wǒ zhīdao le.

Thank you. I surely will.

会话二

(Li Fang's friend has just moved into a new apartment, so he wants to congratulate his friend.)

女士:欢迎欢迎!

Huānyíng huānyíng!

Welcome, welcome!

李方:对于您的搬家,我表示祝贺。

Duìyú nín de bānjiā, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

Congratulations on the new place.

女士:谢谢! 谢谢!

Xièxie! Xièxie!

Thank you very much!

李方:我能参观一下您的房子吗?

Wǒ néng cānguān yíxià nín de fángzi ma?

May I have a look at your place?

女士:当然可以。请你跟我来。请进!

Dāngrán kěyǐ. Qǐng nǐ gēn wǒ lái. Qǐng jìn!

Of course, you may. Please follow me. Come in.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

生日快乐	shēngri kuàilè	happy birthday
一路平安	yílù píng'ān	to have a safe trip
一切顺利	yíqiè shùnlì	everything goes smoothly
圣诞快乐	Shèngdàn kuàilè	Merry Christmas
新年快乐	Xīnián kuàilè	Happy New Year
万事如意	wànshì rúyì	May you fulfill anything that you desire
旅途愉快	lǚtú yúkuài	to have a pleasant trip
随便吃	suíbiàn chī	to eat as much as you like
随便看	suíbiàn kàn	to look around freely
随便玩儿	suíbiàn wánr	to enjoy yourself
随便挑	suíbiàn tiāo	to choose whatever you like
随便买	suíbiàn mǎi	to buy whatever you like
成功	chénggōng	to succeed; success
升职	shēng zhí	to promote; promotion
成绩	chéngjì	achievement; score

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 祝你生日快乐!

   Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

新年快乐
xīnnián kuàilè
工作顺利
gōngzuò shùnlì
旅途愉快
lǚtú yúkuài
万事如意
wànshì rúyì

2. 对于您的搬家,我表示祝贺。

   Duì yú nín de bānjiā, wǒ biǎoshì zhùhè.

成功
chénggōng
生日
shēngri
毕业
bìyè
升职
shēng zhí

3. 请随便<u>吃</u>,不用客气。

Qǐng suíbiàn <u>chī</u>, búyòng kèqi.

看
kàn
玩儿
wánr
用
yòng
穿
chuān

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你的朋友过生日、毕业、搬家,你怎么祝贺?

   Nǐ de péngyou guò shēngri, bìyè, bān jiā, nǐ zěnme zhùhè?

   What do you say when your friend celebrates his/her birthday, graduates from school or moves?

2. 你的朋友来你家吃饭,你希望他们不要客气,你怎么说?

   Nǐ de péngyou lái nǐ jiā chī fàn, nǐ xīwàng tāmen bú yào kèqi, nǐ zěnme shuō?

   Your friends come to your place to have dinner. How do you say "help yourself" in Chinese?

第四十四课　请　假

Dì-sìshísì Kè　　Qǐng Jià

Lesson 44　Ask for Leave



句型　Sentence Pattern:

……，我要去……。我要请……假。

……, wǒ yào qù……. Wǒ yào qǐng ……jià.

你知道吗？Do you know?

如果有特殊原因不能上课、上学或上班，应该请假。最正式的请假是写请假条，如果是病假，应该有医生的证明。

You should ask for leave if you cannot go to school. The most formal way is writing a note. A doctor's note is required when you ask for a sick leave.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 请假	qǐng jià	to ask for leave
2. 接	jiē	to receive; to meet; to welcome
3. 事假	shìjià	leave of absence (to attend private affairs)
4. 病	bìng	disease; illness; sickness; ill; defect
5. 病假	bìngjià	sick leave

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

明天上午，我妈妈要从美国来北京，我要去飞机场接她。我要请半天事假。

Míngtiān shàngwǔ, wǒ māma yào cóng Měiguó lái Běijīng, wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng jiē tā. Wǒ yào qǐng bàntiān shìjià.

My mother is coming to Beijing from America tomorrow morning. I will meet her at the airport. I would like to ask for a half-day

leave from work.

- Sometimes you happen to fall sick or have an urgent matter to attend to which compels you to ask for leave from your boss. For instance, your mother is coming to the city by plane the next morning and you must go to the airport to pick her up. You then need to ask your boss for leave from work by saying: "Míngtiān shàngwǔ, wǒ māma cóng Měiguó lái Běijīng, wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng jiē tā. Wǒ yào qǐng bàntiān shìjià。" The following are more examples:

 (1)今天上午,我要去看大夫,我要请半天病假。

 Jīntiān shàngwǔ, wǒ yào qù kàn dàifu, wǒ yào qǐng bàntiān bìngjià.

 I will see a doctor this morning. I need to ask for half day sick leave.

 (2)现在我很不舒服,我要请一天病假。

 Xiànzài wǒ hěn bù shūfu, wǒ yào qǐng yì tiān bìngjià.

 I feel very uncomfortable right now. I need to ask for a sick leave for one day.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is an employee asking his manager for leave.)

男士:经理,明天上午,我妈妈要从美国来北京,我要去飞机场接她。我要请半天事假。

Jīnglǐ, míngtiān shàngwǔ, wǒ māma yào cóng Měiguó lái Běijīng, wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng jiē tā. Wǒ yào qǐng

bàn tiān shìjià.

Manager, my mother is coming to Beijing from America tomorrow morning, and I will pick her up at the airport. I would like to ask for leave from work for half a day.

老板:有什么要我帮忙的吗?

Yǒu shénme yào wǒ bāngmáng de ma?

Do you need any help?

男士:没有,谢谢。

Méiyǒu, xièxie.

No, thank you.

老板:问你妈妈好。

Wèn nǐ māma hǎo.

Please send my regards to her.

男士:谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you!

会话二

(The boss asks why Ali hasn't come.)

老板:阿里怎么没来?

Ālǐ zěnme méi lái?

Why is Ali not here?

男士:他病了,他今天请病假。

Tā bìng le, tā jīntiān qǐng bìngjià.

He is sick. He has asked for sick leave today.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

请假	qǐng jià	to ask for leave
事假	shìjià	private leave (to attend to personal matters)
病假	bìngjià	sick leave
婚假	hūnjià	marriage leave
产假	chǎnjià	child delivery leave
丧假	sāngjià	funeral leave
探亲假	tànqīnjià	leave for parents visit
年假	niánjià	annual holiday
暑/寒假	shǔ/hánjià	summer/winter holiday
需要	xūyào	to need; to require
照顾	zhàogù	to look after; to take care of

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

明天上午,我妈妈要从美国来北京,我要去飞机场接她。我要请半天事假。

Míngtiān shàngwǔ, wǒ māma yào cóng Měiguó lái Běijīng, wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng jiē tā. Wǒ yào qǐng bàn tiān shìjià.

从昨天晚上开始我头疼 Cóng zuótiān wǎnshang kāishǐ wǒ tóu téng	一天病假 yì tiān bìngjià
现在我有点儿恶心 Xiànzài wǒ yǒudiǎnr ěxin	半天病假 bàn tiān bìngjià
星期六我要去参加一个婚礼 Xīngqīliù wǒ yào qù cānjiā yí gè hūnlǐ	一天事假 yì tiān shìjià
昨天我奶奶病了,需要我照顾她 Zuótiān wǒ nǎinai bìng le, xūyào wǒ zhàogù tā	三天事假 sān tiān shìjià

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你感冒了,你向你的老板请一天病假。
   Nǐ gǎnmào le, nǐ xiàng nǐ de lǎobǎn qǐng yì tiān bìngjià.
   You catch a cold, so you ask your boss for sick leave.
2. 你的车丢了,你向你的老板请一天假。
   Nǐ de chē diū le, nǐ xiàng nǐ de lǎobǎn qǐng yì tiān jià.
   Your car is lost, so you ask your boss for a day off.

第四十五课　请　客

Dì-sìshíwǔ Kè　　Qǐng Kè

Lesson 45　Being the Host



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 星期六晚上，我想请你……。

   Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ…….

2. ……，我们不见不散。

   ……, wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

你知道吗? Do you know?

在中国,如果说“请客”一定是邀请的人付钱,别的人不用付钱。现在,很多年轻人开始流行AA制,各付一份钱,但一般会事先说好。朋友一起吃饭,可能是每个人点自己喜欢的菜,但是要放在一起吃,不是自己吃自己的菜,结账的时候,如果是AA制,饭费也是均摊的。

In China, whoever says “Wǒ qǐng kè” will pay the bill of the meal. Now going Dutch is very popular among the young. They decide to go Dutch before going to the restaurants and ordering their own favorites. But they eat everything together, instead of each only eating what he or she ordered.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 请客	qǐng kè	to entertain guests; to treat to invite someone to dinner
2. 门口	ménkǒu	entrance; doorway
3. 见	jiàn	to see; to meet with
4. 散	sàn	to break up; to disperse
5. 不见不散	bú jiàn bú sàn	Let's not leave without seeing each other

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 星期六晚上,我想请你吃饭。

   Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ chī fàn.

   I would like to invite you to a meal on Saturday evening.

   - Have you ever invited your friend to dinner? Usually, we make an invitation in advance, perhaps two days ahead of time. When making the invitation, you may say this: "Xīngqīliù wǎnshang,wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ chī fàn." Here are more useful examples:

     (1)星期六晚上,我想请你看电影。

     Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ kàn diànyǐng.

     I wish to invite you to a movie on Saturday evening.

     (2)星期六晚上,我想请你喝咖啡。

     Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ hē kāfēi.

     I would like to invite you to have coffee with me on Saturday evening.

2. 星期六晚上 6:00,在长城饭店门口见,我们不见不散。

   Xīngqīliù wǎnshang liù diǎn, zài Chángchéng Fàndiàn ménkǒu jiàn,wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

   We will meet on Saturday evening at six o'clock at the entrance of the Great Wall Hotel. Let's not leave without seeing each other.

   - Your friends have been told where and when to meet. However, if you are afraid that you might not arrive on time, you

can ask your friends to be sure to wait for you. In Chinese, we say "bú jiàn bú sàn". Here are more examples:

(1) 明天早上 8:00,在公司门口,我们不见不散。

Míngtiān zǎoshang bā diǎn, zài gōngsī ménkǒu, wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

We will meet at the company'entrance at 8 o'clock tomorrow morning. Let's be sure to meet.

(2) 星期一下午 3:00,在商场门口,我们不见不散。

Xīngqīyī xiàwǔ sān diǎn, zài shāngchǎng ménkǒu, wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

We will meet at the department store's entrance at 3 o'clock on Monday afternoon. Be sure to wait until everyone's arrived.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Here, a woman asks her friend to dinner at the Great Wall Hotel.)

男士:你好,这几天,你忙吗?

Nǐ hǎo, zhè jǐ tiān, nǐ máng ma?

Hello. Are you going to be busy over the next few days?

女士:有一点儿忙。

Yǒu yìdiǎnr máng.

A bit busy.

男士:星期六晚上,你有空吗?

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, nǐ yǒu kòng ma?

Are you free on Saturday evening?

女士:有什么事?

Yǒu shénme shì?

What's going on?

男士:星期六晚上,我想请你吃饭。

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ chī fàn.

I want to invite you to dinner.

女士:都有谁参加?

Dōu yǒu shuí cānjiā?

Who else will join in?

男士:我、你、阿里和三木,一共4个人。

Wǒ, nǐ, Ālǐ hé Sānmù, yígòng sì gè rén.

Me, you, Ali and Migi. All together four people.

女士:好,没有问题。阿里不吃中国菜,你知道吗?

Hǎo, méiyǒu wèntí. Ālǐ bù chī Zhōngguó cài, nǐ zhīdao ma?

Ok, no problem. Do you know that Ali doesn't like Chinese cuisine?

男士:知道。星期六晚上6:00,在长城饭店门口儿见,我们不见不散。

Zhīdao. Xīngqīliù wǎnshang liù diǎn, zài Chángchéng Fàndiàn ménkǒur jiàn, wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

Yes, I do. We will meet at the Great Wall Hotel's entrance at 6 o'clock on Saturday evening. Stay there until we've all arrived.

女士:好,不见不散。

Hǎo, bú jiàn bú sàn.

All right, see you then!

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

星期六晚上	xīngqīliù wǎnshang	Saturday night
明天下午	míngtiān xiàwǔ	tomorrow afternoon
今天晚上	jīntiān wǎnshang	tonight/evening
星期一中午	xīngqīyī zhōngwǔ	Monday noon
长城饭店	Chángchéng Fàndiàn	the Great Wall Hotel
公司大厅	gōngsī dàtīng	company reception room
学校餐厅	xuéxiào cāntīng	school's canteen
商场门口	shāngchǎng ménkǒu	department store's entrance
公园南门	gōngyuán nán mén	the southern gate of the park/garden
不见不散	bú jiàn bú sàn	Don't leave without seeing each other
中国菜	Zhōngguó cài	Chinese cuisine
法国菜	Fǎguó cài	French cuisine
日本料理	Rìběn liàolǐ	Japanese cuisine
自助餐	zìzhù cān	self-service food; buffet

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 星期六晚上,我想请你吃饭。

   Xīngqīliù wǎnshang, wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ chī fàn.

去跳舞
qù tiàowǔ
喝咖啡
hē kāfēi
去参加一个聚会
qù cānjiā yí ge jùhuì
去唱卡拉 OK
qù chàng kǎlā OK

2. 星期六晚上 6:00,在长城饭店门口儿见,我们不见不散。

   Xīngqīliù wǎnshang liù diǎn, zài Chángchéng Fàndiàn ménkǒur jiàn, wǒmen bú jiàn bú sàn.

明天晚上 8:00	公司门口
míngtiān wǎnshang bā diǎn	gōngsī ménkǒu
星期一下午 3:00	商场门口
xīngqīyī xiàwǔ sān diǎn	shāngchǎng ménkǒu
后天早上 9:00	会议室门口
hòutiān zǎoshang jiǔ diǎn	huìyìshì ménkǒu
这星期五下午四点	你家楼下
zhèi xīngqīwǔ xiàwǔ sì diǎn	nǐ jiā lóuxià

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 这个星期六晚上,你想请你的一个朋友去酒吧喝一杯。
   Zhèige xīngqīliù wǎnshang, nǐ xiǎng qǐng nǐ de yí gè péngyou qù jiǔbā hē yì bēi.
   You want to invite a friend of yours to have a drink in the bar this Saturday evening.
2. 你告诉你的朋友,到约会的时间,你一定去。中国人常说什么?
   Nǐ gàosu nǐ de péngyou, dào yuēhuì de shíjiān, nǐ yídìng qù. Zhōngguórén cháng shuō shénme?
   What do Chinese people usually say when they tell their friend they will be definitely there on time?



第四十六课　过　节

Dì-sìshíliù Kè　　Guò Jié

Lesson 46　Celebrate a Festival



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. ……就是中国的……节。

   ……jiùshì Zhōngguó de……jié.

2. 谢谢你，……。

   Xièxie nǐ, …… .



你知道吗? Do you know?

中国最重要的传统节日是中秋节和春节,都是农历的节日,讲究全家人团聚在一起。有一些西方的节日,比如情人节、圣诞节,在中国也越来越流行了,年轻人也会按照西方的习惯过这些节日。另外,5月1号劳动节和10月1号国庆节,也非常重要,全国放假一个星期。

The Spring Festival and Mid-Autumn Day are the most important traditional holidays in China. The Spring festival is on the first day of the first lunar month, and Mid Autumn Day is on the fifteenth of the eighth lunar month. They are times for family reunion. Some western holidays, such as Christmas and St. Valentine's Day, are becoming more and more popular in China among the young people. In addition, May Day (International Labors' Day) and National Day on October 1st are also very important, when the Chinese people enjoy one week holiday.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 过节	guò jié	to celebrate a festival
2. 重要	zhòngyào	important; significant; major
3. 像	xiàng	resemble; like; same as
4. 圣诞节	Shèngdànjié	Christmas Day
5. 假期	jiàqī	vacation; holiday; period of leave
6. 国庆节	Guóqìngjié	National Day

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 下星期二就是中国的春节。
   Xià xīngqī'èr jiù shì Zhōngguó de Chūnjié.
   Next Tuesday is China's Spring Festival.
   - In China, we have several annual festivals. Some are traditional like Chinese Spring Festival, Mid-autumn Festival, etc. Some are international like Christmas, New Year's Day, etc. We all enjoy festivals. We often remind others by saying: "Xià xīngqī'èr jiù shì Zhōngguó de Chūnjié." Here are more examples:
     (1) 明天就是中国的中秋节。
     Míngtiān jiù shì Zhōngguó de Zhōngqiūjié.
     Tomorrow is China's Mid-autumn Festival.
     (2) 星期日就是中国的国庆节。
     Xīngqīrì jiù shì Zhōngguó de Guóqìngjié.
     This Sunday is China's National Day.
2. 谢谢你,告诉我这么多。
   Xièxie nǐ, gàosu wǒ zhème duō。
   Thank you for telling me so much.
   - How would you thank a friend who has told you many things about Chinese festivals and customs? You want to express your appreciation by saying something. Here is the Chinese way of saying that: "Xièxie nǐ, gàosu wǒ zhème duō." The following are more examples:

(1) 谢谢你,帮了我这么多忙。

Xièxie nǐ, bāngle wǒ zhème duō máng.

Thank you for helping me so much.

(2) 谢谢你,送给我孩子的礼物。

Xièxie nǐ, sòng gěi wǒ háizi de lǐwù.

Thank you for giving gifts to my child.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(Two persons are talking about festivals.)

男士:这几天,你常常买东西。

Zhè jǐ tiān, nǐ chángcháng mǎi dōngxi.

Recently you've been doing a lot of shopping.

女士:对,下星期二是中国的春节,我要买很多东西。

Duì, xià xīngqī'èr shì Zhōngguó de Chūnjié, wǒ yào mǎi hěn duō dōngxi.

Yes. Next Tuesday is China's Spring Festival. I need to prepare many things.

男士:中国最重要的节日是什么节?

Zhōngguó zuì zhòngyào de jiérì shì shénme jié?

What is the most important festival in China?

女士:春节。就像西方的圣诞节。假期很长,有7天左右。

Chūnjié. Jiù xiàng xīfāng de Shèngdànjié. Jiàqī hěn cháng, yǒu qī tiān zuǒyòu.

Spring Festival. It's just like Christmas in the West. We have a long holiday during that time. It's about seven days.

男士：还有什么节比较重要？

Háiyǒu shénme jié bǐjiào zhòngyào?

Are there any other festivals that are rather important?

女士：中秋节、10月1日国庆节和5月1日劳动节。

Zhōngqiūjié, shí yuè yī rì Guóqìngjié hé wǔ yuè yī rì Láodòngjié.

There are China's Mid-autumn Festival, National Day on October 1st, and Labor Day on May 1st.

男士：新年呢？

Xīnnián ne?

How about the New Year?

女士：常常只休假一天。

Chángcháng zhǐ xiūjià yì tiān.

We usually have just one day to rest.

男士：谢谢你，告诉我这么多。

Xièxie nǐ, gàosu wǒ zhème duō.

Thanks for telling me so much.

女士：不客气。

Bú kèqi.

You are welcome.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

圣诞节	Shèngdànjié	Christmas
国庆节	Guóqìngjié	National Day
劳动节	Láodòngjié	Labor Day
妇女节	Fùnǚjié	Women's Day
新年	Xīnnián	New Year
中秋节	Zhōngqiūjié	Mid-autumn Festival
春节	Chūnjié	Spring Festival; Chinese new year
元宵节	Yuánxiāojié	Festival of Lanterns
端午节	Duānwǔjié	Dragon Boat Festival
重阳节	Chóngyángjié	Double Ninth Festival
清明节	Qīngmíngjié	Ancester Worship Day
情人节	Qíngrénjié	Valentine's Day
母亲节	Mǔqīnjié	Mother's Day
教师节	Jiàoshījié	Teacher's Day
月饼	yuèbǐng	mooncake
元宵	yuánxiāo	rice glue ball; *yuanxiao*

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 下星期二是中国的春节。

   Xià xīngqīèr shì Zhōngguó de Chūnjié.

明天 Míngtiān 星期日 Xīngqīrì 9月10日 Jiǔ yuè shí rì 五月的第二个星期天 Wǔyuè de dì'èr ge xīngqītiān	中国的中秋节 Zhōngguó de Zhōngqiūjié 中国的国庆节 Zhōngguó de Guóqìngjié 中国的教师节 Zhōngguó de Jiàoshījié 母亲节 Mǔqīnjié

2. 谢谢你，告诉我这么多。

Xièxie nǐ, gàosu wǒ zhème duō.

帮了我这么多忙 bāng le wǒ zhème duō máng 寄给我这么好吃的月饼 jì gěi wǒ zhème hǎochī de yuèbǐng 送给我孩子的礼物 sòng gěi wǒ háizi de lǐwù 邀请我和你们一起过春节 yāoqǐng wǒ hé nǐmen yìqǐ guò Chūnjié

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 向一个中国人介绍一个你们国家的节日。

Xiàng yí gè Zhōngguórén jièshào yí gè nǐmen guójiā de jiérì.

Introduce one of your national holidays to a Chinese.

2. 对朋友为你做的饭表示感谢。

Duì péngyou wèi nǐ zuò de fàn biǎoshì gǎnxiè.

Express appreciation for the dishes your friend cooked for you.

第四十七课　广播找人
Dì-sìshíqī Kè　Guǎngbō Zhǎo Rén

Lesson 47　Look for Someone Using PA System



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我想请你帮我,……。
   Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, …… .
2. 我们为您……。
   Wǒmen wèi nín …… .

你知道吗? Do you know?

在商场、飞机场、火车站都提供广播找人服务。如果你和朋友走散了,可以通过这些地方的服务广播,和你的朋友约定见面地点,很方便。

Department stores, airports and railway stations can help you find lost people using a PA announcement. If you find that a friend is missing, you can use this service to let your friend know you are looking for him or her, and set a place to meet. Isn't that convenient?

生词　Vocabulary

1. 广播	guǎngbō	to broadcast; radio broadcast
2. 找人	zhǎo rén	to look for a person
3. 商城	shāngchéng	shopping complex
4. 急事	jíshì	urgent matter
5. 为	wèi	for

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我想请你帮我,用广播找一个人。
   Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, yòng guǎngbō zhǎo yí gè rén.
   I would like to ask you to help me find a person using the PA system.
   - It is difficult to find someone in a big department store or the

railway station since there are so many people. In this case, we can often ask the public relations' staff for help in making an announcement over the loudspeakers. When you need such help, you may say: "Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ ……." The following are more examples:

(1) 我想请你帮我,用你的车接一个人。

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, yòng nǐ de chē jiē yí gè rén.

I want to ask you to help me pick up a person in your car.

(2) 我想请你帮我,写一封英文信。

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, xiě yì fēng Yīngwén xìn.

I want to ask you to help me write an English letter.

2. 我们为您广播五次。

Wǒmen wèi nín guǎngbō wǔ cì.

We will broadcast five times for you.

- The staff will normally answer your request like this: "Wǒmen wèi nín……" Here are more examples:

(1) 我们为您修理一次。

Wǒmen wèi nín xiūlǐ yí cì.

We will repair it once for you.

(2) 我们为您换一个。

Wǒmen wèi nín huàn yí gè.

We will change one for you.



情景会话　Situational Conversation

(Here is a customer approaching the store's staff for help.)

男士:小姐,您好。

Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo.

Hello, Miss.

女士:您好,有事吗?

Nín hǎo, yǒu shì ma?

Hello. Can I help you?

男士:我的朋友在商城里买东西,我有急事要找他。我想请你帮我,用广播找一个人。

Wǒ de péngyou zài shāngchéng lǐ mǎi dōngxi, wǒ yǒu jíshì yào zhǎo tā. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, yòng guǎngbō zhǎo yí gè rén.

My friend is shopping here. I have an urgent matter and need to find him. I would like you to help me find him through the loudspeaker.

女士:他叫什么名字?

Tā jiào shénme míngzi?

What's his name?

男士:金大建。

Jīn Dàjiàn.

Jin Dajian.

女士:你在哪儿等他?

Nǐ zài nǎr děng tā?

Where will you be waiting for him?

男士:大门口。

Dàménkǒu.

At the entrance of the department store.

女士:请等一下。我们为您广播五次。

Qǐng děng yíxià. Wǒmen wèi nín guǎngbō wǔ cì.

Please wait a while. We will broadcast your message five times.

男士:谢谢。

Xièxie.

Thank you.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

接一个人	jiē yí gè rén	to pick up a person
写一封信	xiě yì fēng xìn	to write a letter
借一本书	jiè yì běn shū	to borrow a book
做一道题	zuò yí dào tí	to answer a question
打一个电话	dǎ yí gè diànhuà	to make a telephone call
发一个传真	fā yí gè chuánzhēn	to send a fax
买一瓶酒	mǎi yì píng jiǔ	to buy a bottle of liquor
讲这节课	jiǎng zhèijié kè	to teach this class
修这辆车	xiū zhèiliàng chē	to repair this car
换这块表	huàn zhèikuài biǎo	to exchange this watch
找这本书	zhǎo zhèiběn shū	to look for this book

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我想请你帮我,用广播找一个人。

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nǐ bāng wǒ, yòng guǎngbō zhǎo yí ge rén.

用你的车接两个朋友
yòng nǐ de chē jiē liǎng gè péngyou
写一封中文信
xiě yì fēng zhōngwén xìn
修理这辆汽车
xiūlǐ zhèiliàng qìchē
告诉老板我今天不舒服
gàosu lǎobǎn wǒ jīntiān bù shūfu

2. 我们为您广播五次。

Wǒmen wèi nín guǎngbō wǔ cì.

修理一下
xiūlǐ yíxià
换一个电话
huàn yí gè diànhuà
找这本书
zhǎo zhèiběn shū
再发一次传真
zài fā yí cì chuánzhēn
打扫房间
dǎsǎo fángjiān
找辆出租车
zhǎo liàng chūzūchē

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 在商场里,你朋友的孩子不见了,你请工作人员用广播找这个孩子。

   Zài shāngchǎng lǐ, nǐ péngyou de háizi bú jiàn le, nǐ qǐng gōngzuò rényuán yòng guǎngbō zhǎo zhèige háizi.

   Your friend's child is missing in a department store. You ask the personnel to make an announcement using PA system to look for the child.

2. 介绍一个孩子的姓名和外貌特征。

   Jièshào yí gè háizi de xìngmíng hé wàimào tèzhēng.

   Tell us a child's name and describe his/her appearance characteristics.



第四十八课　给别人带话

Dì-sìshíbā Kè　Gěi Biéren Dài Huà

Lesson 48　Take a Message for Somebody



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 麻烦你一件事，请你告诉……，让他……。
   Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu……, ràng tā…….
2. ……让我告诉你……。
   ……ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ…….

你知道吗？Do you know?

给别人带话是常有的事，要说清楚时间、地点、谁、什么事。可以口头带话，也可以写留言条。

It is common in China to take a message to someone. The message should state who called, when, and what they wanted. It might be an oral message, or a written note.

生词 Vocabulary

1.	带话	dài huà	to take one's words to; to pass on a message
2.	总	zǒng	assemble; general
3.	告诉	gàosu	to tell, to let know
4.	开会	kāi huì	to hold/attend a meeting

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 麻烦你一件事，请你告诉小王，让他明天下午去经理办公室开会。

   Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu Xiǎo Wáng, ràng tā míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

   Will you do me a favor? Please inform Xiao Wang that tomorrow afternoon he has to attend a meeting at the manager's office.

- Sometimes, we need to ask a person to pass a message to another person. You should politely start like this: "Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì……." and then give your message. Here "Xiǎo Wáng" and "Lǎo Wáng" are forms of addressing a person. They are often used among friends and colleagues. The following are more examples:

  (1) 麻烦你一件事，请你告诉老王，让他今天下午去经理办公室拿钱。

  Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu Lǎo Wáng, ràng tā jīntiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì ná qián.

  I have a favor to ask of you. Please tell Lao Wang to go to the manager's office to get his money this afternoon.

  (2) 麻烦你一件事，请你告诉阿里，让他明天下午去办公室找张老师。

  Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu Ālǐ, ràng tā míngtiān xiàwǔ qù bàngōngshì zhǎo Zhāng lǎoshī.

  May I bother you with something? Please tell Ali to go to see Teacher Zhang in the office tomorrow afternoon.

2. 老李让我告诉你，明天下午去经理办公室开会。

Lǎo Lǐ ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ, míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

Lao Li asked me to tell you to attend a meeting at the manager's office tomorrow afternoon.

- If you are passing on a message, you may give the message to the person like this: "……ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ……." Here are more examples:

  (1) 张山让我告诉你今天下午去经理办公室拿钱。

  Zhāng Shān ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ

bàngōngshì ná qián.

Zhang Sham asked me to tell you to go to the manager's office this afternoon to get the money.

(2) 李力让我告诉你明天下午去办公室找张老师。

Lǐ Lì ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ míngtiān xiàwǔ qù bàngōngshì zhǎo Zhāng lǎoshī.

Li Li asked me to tell you to go to see Teacher Zhang at the office tomorrow afternoon.



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man asking his colleague to give a message to Xiao Wang.)

男士:你去哪儿?

Nǐ qù nǎr?

Where are you going?

同事:我去总公司。

Wǒ qù zǒng gōngsī.

I am going to the General Company.

男士:麻烦你一件事,请你告诉小王,让她明天下午去经理办公室开会。

Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu Xiǎo Wáng, ràng tā míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

Can I ask you to do something? Please tell Xiao Wang to attend the meeting tomorrow afternoon at the manager's office.

同事：我一定告诉她。

Wǒ yídìng gàosu tā.

I will be sure to tell her.

会话二

(In Xiao Wang's office)

男士：小王，老李让我告诉你明天下午去经理办公室开会。

Xiǎo Wáng, Lǎo Lǐ ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

Xiao Wang, Lao Li asked me to tell you to attend a meeting at the manager's office tomorrow afternoon.

小王：有什么事吗？

Yǒu shénme shì ma?

Do you know what it is about?

男士：不知道。

Bù zhīdao.

Sorry, I don't know.

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

总公司	zǒng gōngsī	head quarter (of a corporation)
分公司	fēn gōngsī	branch office
大公司	dà gōngsī	big company
小公司	xiǎo gōngsī	small company
中国公司	Zhōngguó gōngsī	Chinese company

值班室	zhíbānshì	room for sb. on duty
财务室	cáiwùshì	financial affairs office
休息室	xiūxishì	rest room
经理办公室	jīnglǐ bàngōngshì	manager's office
老师办公室	lǎoshī bàngōngshì	teacher's office
公司办公室	gōngsī bàngōngshì	company's office
老板办公室	lǎobǎn bàngōngshì	boss's office

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 麻烦你一件事，请你告诉小王，让他明天下午去经理办公室开会。

   Máfan nǐ yí jiàn shì, qǐng nǐ gàosu Xiǎo Wáng, ràng tā míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

老王 Lǎo Wáng	今天去财务室拿钱 jīntiān qù cáiwùshì ná qián
阿里 Ālǐ	明天下午去学校找张老师 míngtiān xiàwǔ qù xuéxiào zhǎo Zhāng lǎoshī
小丽 Xiǎolì	今天晚上去北京饭店开会 jīntiān wǎnshang qù Běijīng Fàndiàn kāi huì
小张 Xiǎo Zhāng	星期六到医生值班室找我 xīngqīliù dào yīshēng zhíbānshì zhǎo wǒ

2. 老李让我告诉你明天下午去经理办公室开会。
Lǎo Lǐ ràng wǒ gàosu nǐ míngtiān xiàwǔ qù jīnglǐ bàngōngshì kāi huì.

张山 Zhāng Shān	今天下午去公司财务室拿钱 jīntiān xiàwǔ qù gōngsī cáiwùshì ná qián
李力 Lǐ Lì	明天下午去学校找张老师 míngtiān xiàwǔ qù xuéxiào zhǎo Zhāng lǎoshī
老刘 Lǎo Liú	今天晚上去北京饭店开会 jīntiān wǎnshang qù Běijīng Fàndiàn kāihuì
吴医生 Wú yīshēng	星期六到医生值班室找他 xīngqīliù dào yīshēng zhíbānshì zhǎo tā

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 请朋友的同事告诉你的朋友:你找过他,如果他有时间,给你打一个电话。
Qǐng péngyou de tóngshì gàosu nǐ de péngyou: nǐ zhǎoguo tā, rúguǒ tā yǒu shíjiān, gěi nǐ dǎ yí gè diànhuà.
Ask your friend's colleague to tell your friend, you came to see him. If he has time, please call you back.
2. 经理让你通知你的同事,下午3:00开会,你怎么说?
Jīnglǐ ràng nǐ tōngzhī nǐ de tóngshì, xiàwǔ sān diǎn kāi huì, nǐ zěnme shuō?
The manager asks you to inform your colleagues that there will be a meeting at 3:00 PM. How do you tell your colleagues?

第四十九课　逛古董市场

Dì-sìshíjiǔ Kè　Guàng Gǔdǒng Shìchǎng

Lesson 49　Shop at an Antique Market



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 我对……(很)感兴趣。

   Wǒ duì……(hěn)gǎn xìngqù.

2. 这个……是真品吗?

   Zhèige……shì zhēnpǐn ma?



你知道吗？Do you know?

古董市场也有很多假货，是仿造的假古董，如果不了解古董，很容易买到赝品。所以去古董市场买东西的时候，要十分小心，最好和有经验的朋友一起去买。当然，如果你只想买一些有中国特色的东西，不在乎真假的话，也可以随便买一点。

There are often many fake antiques in antique markets. People can be often cheated easily if they know little about antiques. You must be careful or go with experienced friends when you want to buy antiques. Of course if you just want to purchase something with a Chinese look and do not care if it is authentic, you do not need to worry.



生词 Vocabulary

1. 古董	gǔdǒng	antique
2. 字画	zìhuà	calligraphy and painting
3. 书籍	shūjí	books; works
4. 瓷器	cíqì	porcelain; chinaware
5. 假一赔十	jiǎ yī péi shí	1 fake will be punished 10 times
6. 赝品	yànpǐn	counterfeit; fake; sham
7. 开张价	kāizhāng jià	price of the first transaction of a day's business

常用表达法
Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 我对中国古代的字画、书籍、瓷器都很感兴趣。

   Wǒ duì Zhōngguó gǔdài de zìhuà, shūjí, cíqì dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù.

   I am very interested in Chinese ancient calligraphy and painting, books and porcelain.

   - A history of thousands of years has left China with tremendous cultural relics. For many tourists from other countries, the antique market is a good place to learn about Chinese history and culture. The antiques and old furniture can make beautiful collection pieces. If you are asked what Chinese things you are interested in, you can say: "Wǒ duì……dōu (hěn) gǎn xìngqù." The following are some examples:

     (1)我对中国的书法和绘画都很感兴趣。

     Wǒ duì Zhōngguó de shūfǎ hé huìhuà dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù.

     I am quite interested in Chinese calligraphy and painting.

     (2) 我对中国古代的历史和文化都很感兴趣。

     Wǒ duì Zhōngguó gǔdài de lìshǐ hé wénhuà dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù.

     I am very interested in ancient Chinese history and culture.

2. 这个花瓶是真品吗?

   Zhèige huāpíng shì zhēnpǐn ma?

   Is this vase an authentic work?

- The selection of antiques requires a great deal of knowledge, and many fake products are on the market. If you are not sure if the product you are buying is authentic, you should take it to an expert and ask: "Zhèige……shì zhēnpǐn ma?" "zhēnpǐn" means authentic, genuine work. But "yànpǐn" is a fake. Here are some examples:

  (1) 这幅字画是真品吗?

  Zhè fú zìhuà shì zhēnpǐn ma?

  Is this calligraphy and painting work authentic?

  (2) 这个盘子是真品吗?

  Zhèige pánzi shì zhēnpǐn ma?

  Is this plate an authentic work?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

会话一

(Here is a man asking his friend to go to the antique market together.)

男士:明天是周末,你能陪我去看看这里的古董市场吗?

Míngtiān shì zhōumò, nǐ néng péi wǒ qù kànkan zhèlǐ de gǔdǒng shìchǎng ma?

Tomorrow is the weekend, would you like to go to the antique market with me?

女士:没问题,不知道你想看什么。

Méi wèntí, bù zhīdao nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme。

No problem. What do you want to look for?

男士:我对中国古代的字画、书籍、瓷器都很感兴趣。

Wǒ duì Zhōngguó gǔdài de zìhuà, shūjí, cíqì dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù.

I am quite interested in ancient Chinese calligraphy and painting, also books and porcelain.

会话二

(Here, a customer wants to buy something.)

男士:老板,这个花瓶多少钱?

Lǎobǎn, zhèige huāpíng duōshao qián?

Boss, how much does this vase cost?

摊贩:这是清朝的青花瓷瓶,如果你真想要,给 1000 吧。

Zhè shì qīngcháo de qīnghuā cípíng, rúguǒ nǐ zhēn xiǎng yào, gěi yìqiān ba.

This blue and green porcelain vase is from the Qing Dynasty. If you really want it, I will sell to you for 1,000 yuan.

女士:1 000 块? 太贵了。你这花瓶是真品吗?

Yìqiān kuài? Tài guì le. Nǐ zhè huāpíng shì zhēnpǐn ma?

1,000 yuan? That's too expensive. Is your vase authentic?

摊贩:您放心,我们这儿假一赔十,绝对没有赝品。

Nín fàngxīn, wǒmen zhèr jiǎ yī péi shí, juéduì méiyǒu yànpǐn.

You can rest assured. Our shop is punished 10 times for 1 fake. There are absolutely no fakes here.

男士:900 块,卖不卖?

Jiǔbǎi kuài, mài bú mài?

Will you give it to me for 900 yuan?

摊贩:行,给你个开张价。

Xíng, gěi nǐ ge kāizhāngjià.

Done. I'll give you a good price to begin my today's business.

练习 Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

名胜古迹	míngshèng gǔjì	scenic spots and historical sites
书法	shūfǎ	calligraphy
篆刻	zhuànkè	seal cutting
字画	zìhuà	calligraphy and painting
丝绸	sīchóu	silk
茶叶	cháyè	tea
历史	lìshǐ	history
文化	wénhuà	culture
瓷器	cíqì	porcelain; chinaware
玉器	yùqì	jadeware
金碗	jīn wǎn	gold bowl
银勺	yín sháo	silver spoon
玉石	yùshí	jade
戒指	jièzhi	ring

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 我对中国古代的字画、书籍、瓷器都很感兴趣。

   Wǒ duì Zhōngguó gǔdài de zì huà, shūjí, cíqì dōu hěn gǎn xìngqù.

中国的名胜古迹
Zhōngguó de míngshèng gǔjì
丝绸和瓷器
sīchóu hé cíqì
中国书法
Zhōngguó shūfǎ
绘画和篆刻
huìhuà hé zhuànkè

2. 这个花瓶是真品吗?

   Zhèige huāpíng shì zhēnpǐn ma?

瓷盘	金碗
cí pán	jīn wǎn
玉杯	玉石戒指
yù bēi	bǎoshí jièzhi

三、能力训练(Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.)

1. 你对什么古董感兴趣?

   Nǐ duì shénme gǔdǒng gǎn xìngqù?

   What kind of antiques are you interested in?

2. 你想问一幅画是不是真品?

   Nǐ xiǎng wèn yì fú huà shì bú shì zhēnpǐn?

   You want to know if a painting is authentic.

第五十课　参加交易会

Dì-wǔshí Kè　Cānjiā Jiāoyìhuì

Lesson 50　Take Part in a Trade Fair



句型　Sentence Pattern:

1. 您想……什么……?

   Nín xiǎng……shénme……?

2. 这次……什么时候结束?

   Zhèi cì……shénme shíhou jiéshù?

你知道吗？Do you know?

中国最有名的商品交易会是中国出口商品交易会，又称广交会，创办于1957年春季，每年春秋两季在广州举办，是中国目前影响最大的交易会。另外，在大连、温州等地举办的交易会影响也越来越大。

In China, the most famous and influential trade fair is the Guangzhou Export Commodities Fair (Guǎng Jiāo Huì), which was started in the spring of 1957 and is held in Guangzhou twice a year, i.e. spring and autumn. Besides this, the trade fairs held in Dalian and Wenzhou are becoming more and more important.

生词 Vocabulary

1. 交易会	jiāoyìhuì	business meeting
2. 商品	shāngpǐn	commodity; goods; merchandise
3. 展位	zhǎnwèi	exhibition booth
4. 产品	chǎnpǐn	product; produce
5. 纺织品	fǎngzhīpǐn	textile; fabric

常用表达法 Useful Phrases and Expressions

1. 你想看什么产品？
   Nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme chǎnpǐn?
   What kind of product are you looking for?

- In China, there are quite a few commodities exhibitions each year. Among them, the Guangzhou Export Commodities Fair (Guǎng Jiāo Huì) is the most famous. It is held twice a year in spring and autumn. When you are attending the exhibition, the people at the fair may ask you: "Nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme chǎnpǐn?" When you ask a person what he/she wants to do, we can use this structure "Nǐ xiǎng …… shénme ……?" The following are more examples:

  (1) 你想吃什么水果?

  Nǐ xiǎng chī shénme shuǐguǒ?

  What fruit do you want to eat?

  (2) 你想看什么地方?

  Nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme dìfang?

  What places would you like to visit?

2. 这次广交会什么时候结束?

Zhèi cì Guǎng Jiāo Huì shénme shíhou jiéshù?

When does this Guangzhou Export Commodities Fair finish?

- If you want to know when this activity will end, you may say: "Zhè cì …… shénme shíhou jiéshù?" Here are more examples:

  (1)这次运动会什么时候结束?

  Zhèi cì yùndònghuì shénme shíhou jiéshù?

  When does this sports meeting finish?

  (2)这次旅行什么时候结束?

  Zhèi cì lǚxíng shénme shíhou jiéshù?

  When does this trip finish?



情景会话 Situational Conversation

(While waiting for somebody, this lady is asking something about the Fair.)

女士:先生,你好。这一次广州商品交易会一共有多少个展位?

Xiānsheng, nǐ hǎo. Zhèicì Guǎngzhōu Shāngpǐn Jiāoyìhuì yígòng yǒu duōshao gè zhǎnwèi?

Hello, Sir. How many exhibition booths are there altogether in this Guangzhou Export Commodities Fair?

男士:3000 多个。请问,你想看什么产品?

Sānqiān duō gè. Qǐngwèn, nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme chǎnpǐn?

More than three thousand. What kind of products do you want to see?

女士:我想看看纺织品和旅游商品。

Wǒ xiǎng kànkan fǎngzhīpǐn hé lǚyóu shāngpǐn.

I want to have a look at textile and traveling products.

男士:纺织品在 3 号展览馆,旅游商品在 5 号展览馆。

Fǎngzhīpǐn zài sān hào zhǎnlǎnguǎn, lǚyóu shāngpǐn zài wǔ hào zhǎnlǎnguǎn.

Textiles are in the No.3 Exhibition Hall. Traveling products are in the No.5 Exhibition Hall.

女士:这次交易会是什么时候开始的?

Zhèicì jiāoyìhuì shì shénme shíhou kāishǐ de?

When did this fair start?

男士：前天。

Qiántiān.

The day before yesterday.

女士：这次广交会什么时候结束？

Zhèicì Guǎng Jiāo Huì shénme shíhou jiéshù?

When does the fair finish?

男士：10 天以后。

Shí tiān yǐhòu.

It will be over in ten days.

女士：谢谢！

Xièxie!

Thank you!

男士：不客气！

Bú kèqi!

You are welcome!

练习　Exercises

一、读一读(Learn the word groups by heart)

吃水果	chī shuǐguǒ	to have/eat fruits
听音乐	tīng yīnyuè	to listen to music
看电视	kàn diànshì	to watch television
穿衣服	chuān yīfu	to wear clothes
喝饮料	hē yǐnliào	to drink a beverage
参观公司	cānguān gōngsī	to visit a company
广交会	Guǎng Jiāo Huì	Guangzhou Export Commodities Fair

运动会	yùndònghuì	sports meeting
音乐会	yīnyuèhuì	concert
比赛	bǐsài	match; competition
表演	biǎoyǎn	performance; show

二、试一试(Substitution drills)

1. 你想看什么产品?

   Nǐ xiǎng kàn shénme chǎnpǐn?

买 mǎi	水果 shuǐguǒ
去 qù	地方 dìfang
听 tīng	音乐 yīnyuè
参加 cānjiā	旅游团 lǚyóutuán

2. 这次广交会什么时候结束?

   Zhècì Guǎng Jiāo Huì shénme shíhou jiéshù?

乒乓球比赛 pīngpāngqiú bǐsài
表演 biǎoyǎn
照片展览 zhàopiàn zhǎnlǎn
音乐会 yīnyuèhuì

三、能力训练(**Make sentences on the following situations. Try to use the grammar you have learned in this lesson.**)

1. 你想知道你的朋友喜欢哪种音乐。

   Nǐ xiǎng zhīdao nǐ de péngyou xǐhuan nǎ zhǒng yīnyuè.

   You want to know what kind of music your friend likes.

2. 你问一个服务员,这个展览会什么时间开始,什么时间结束。

   Nǐ wèn yí gè fúwùyuán, zhèige zhǎnlǎnhuì shénme shíjiān kāishǐ, shénme shíjiān jiéshù.

   You ask a personnel when this exhibition will begin and end.



北大版对外汉语教材推荐

- 魔力汉语(上)——初级汉语口语 33.00元
- 魔力汉语(下)——初级汉语口语 33.00元
- 汉语快易通——初级口语听力 36.00元
- 汉语快易通——中级口语听力 36.00元
- 快乐学汉语(韩文注释本) 22.00元
- 快乐学汉语(日文注释本) 22.00元
- 外国人实用生活汉语(上) 45.00元
- 外国人实用生活汉语(下) 45.00元
- 汉语发音与纠音 10.00元
- 中国概况 30.00元
- 公司汉语 35.00元
- 应用汉语读写教程 25.00元
- 汉英对照 汉语多音字学习手册 27.00元
- 汉英对照 汉语儿化词学习手册 18.00元
- 汉英对照 汉语熟语学习手册 14.00元
- 汉英对照 汉语量词学习手册 15.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试(初中等)全真模拟活页题集(模拟完整题) 34.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试(初中等)全真模拟活页题集(听力理解) 37.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试(初中等)全真模拟活页题集(语法、综合填空、阅读理解) 50.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试模拟习题集(初中等) 40.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试模拟习题集(高等) 50.00元
- HSK 汉语水平考试词汇自测手册 45.00元

- 新汉语教程(1) 33.00元
- 新汉语教程(2) 30.00元
- 新汉语教程(3) 25.00元
- 中级汉语阅读教程(1) 40.00元
- 中级汉语阅读教程(2) 40.00元
- 中级汉语精读教程(1) 38.00元
- 中级汉语精读教程(2) 40.00元
- 初级汉语口语(上) 40.00元
- 初级汉语口语(下) 50.00元
- 中级汉语口语(上) 28.00元
- 中级汉语口语(下) 28.00元
- 高级汉语口语(上) 30.00元
- 高级汉语口语(下) 30.00元
- 汉语初级听力教程(上) 32.00元
- 汉语初级听力教程(下) 45.00元
- 汉语中级听力教程(上) 28.00元
- 汉语中级听力教程(下) 38.00元
- 汉语高级听力教程 30.00元
- 新汉语中级听力(上册) 54.00元
- 文化中国－中国文化阅读教程1 38.00元
- 解读中国－中国文化阅读教程2 42.00元
- 中国传统文化与现代生活－留学生中级文化读本 38.00元
- 中国传统文化与现代生活－留学生高级文化读本 34.00元
- 外国留学生汉语写作指导 26.00元
- 留学生汉语写作进阶 31.00元
- 应用汉语读写教程 25.00元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代神话故事 12.00元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代名著故事 12.00元

- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代军事故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代童话故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代寓言故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代风俗故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代民间故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代成语故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代戏剧故事　12.00 元
- 中国古代文化故事－中国古代名胜故事　12.00 元
- 速成汉语(英语注释本)　25.00 元
- 走进中国(初级本)　25.00 元
- 走进中国(中级本)　25.00 元
- 走进中国(高级本)　25.00 元
- 新编汉语报刊阅读教程(初级本)　25.00 元
- 新编汉语报刊阅读教程(中级本)　26.00 元
- 新编汉语报刊阅读教程(高级本)　40.00 元
- 中国概况(修订版)　30.00 元
- 实用汉语语法(修订本)附习题解答　75.00 元
- 中国剪影　28.00 元
- 话说今日中国　46.00 元
- 现代千字文　25.00 元
- 汉字津梁——基础汉字形音义说解(附练习册)　40.00 元
- 汉字书写入门　28.00 元
- 简明实用汉语语法教程　18.50 元
- 标准汉语教程(上册)(1－4)　100.00 元
- 标准汉语教程(下册)(1－2)　60.00 元
- 参与(汉语中级教程)　40.00 元
- 交际文化汉语(上)　30.00 元
- 交际文化汉语(下)　30.00 元

检6